



Commonwealth of Australia

EDICT OF GOVERNMENT


In order to promote public education and public safety, equal justice for all, a better informed citizenry, the rule of law, world trade and world peace, this legal document is hereby made available on a noncommercial basis, as it is the right of all humans to know and speak the laws that govern them.

AS NCC 1A (2012) (English): National Construction Code,
Volume 1 - Appendices: Variations and Additions
[Authority: As Required by All States and Territory
Governments]

*"We will sell to no man, and we will not deny
or defer to any man, either justice or right."*

Parliamentary Counsel
Australian Capital Territory

*"The content of the law
should be accessible to the public."*
Honourable Murray Gleeson, AC, QC
11th Chief Justice of the High Court



BLANK PAGE





National Construction Code Series 2012

VOLUME ONE – APPENDICES
VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS



BCA 2012 VOLUME ONE APPENDICES

© 2012 Australian Government and States and Territories of Australia

The *NCC 2012 (Volume One, Volume Two & Volume Three)* and the *Guide to the BCA* is the copyright of the Australian Government and States and Territories of Australia and, apart from any use as permitted under the Copyright Act 1998, no part may be reproduced without prior permission. Requests and enquiries concerning reproduction and rights should be directed in the first instance to the General Manager, Australian Building Codes Board, GPO Box 9839 Canberra ACT 2601.

Australian Building Codes Board

GPO Box 9839 Canberra ACT 2601

Telephone: Canberra 1300 134 631 Facsimile: (02) 6213 7287

Web Site: <http://www.abcb.gov.au>

Email: ncc@abcb.gov.au

The Australian Building Codes Board (ABCB) is established by agreement between the Commonwealth Government and each State and Territory Government. It is a co-operative arrangement between the signatories, local government and the building industry.

ABCB Important Disclaimer

While the ABCB has made every effort to ensure the material in this document is accurate and up to date, such material does in no way constitute the provision of professional advice.

The ABCB gives no warranty or guarantee and accepts no legal liability whatsoever arising from or connected to, the accuracy, reliability, currency or completeness of any material contained in this document.

Users should seek appropriate independent professional advice prior to relying on, or entering into any commitment based on material in this document in relation to building or related activities. Its interpretation in no way overrides the approvals processes in any jurisdiction.

NCC Customer Support

Telephone (Australia Only): 1300 134 631

International: +61 2 6213 7842

Facsimile: +61 2 6290 8831

Email: ncc@abcb.gov.au

ISBN 1-921453-79-3 (Volume One Class 2-9 Buildings)



*The pages of this book are printed on paper derived
from forests promoting sustainable management.*

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

STATE & TERRITORY APPENDICES

Appendix Commonwealth of Australia.....	5
Appendix Australian Capital Territory.....	13
Appendix New South Wales	25
Appendix Northern Territory	83
Appendix Queensland.....	107
Appendix South Australia.....	115
Appendix Tasmania.....	151
Appendix Victoria	225
Appendix Western Australia.....	255

APPENDIX

COMMONWEALTH OF AUSTRALIA

**COMMONWEALTH OF
AUSTRALIA**

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX COMMONWEALTH OF AUSTRALIA

Commonwealth of Australia

Footnote: Other Legislation and Policies Affecting Buildings

COMMONWEALTH OF
AUSTRALIA

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AND POLICIES AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements and policies affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Aged Care Buildings

1.1 Administering Agency:

Department of Health and Aging

Relevant Legislation:

Aged Care Act 1997

1999 Certification Assessment Instrument

2. Australian Capital Territory

2.1 Administering Agency:

Department of Regional Australia, Regional Development and Local Government

Relevant Legislation:

Australian Capital Territory (Planning and Land Management) Act 1988

Parliament Act 1974

3. Child Care

3.1 Administering Agency:

Department of Education, Employment and Workplace Relations

Relevant Legislation:

Child Care Act 1972

4. Christmas Island

4.1 Administering Agency:

Department of Regional Australia, Regional Development and Local Government

Relevant Legislation:

Casino Control Ordinance 1988

Casino Control Regulations 1988

Christmas Island Space Centre (APSC Proposal) Ordinance 2001

Christmas Island Space Centre (APSC Proposal) Regulations 2001

Gambling (Clubs) Ordinance 1978

Christmas Island Act 1958

5. Communications and Information Technology

5.1 Administering Agency:

Department of Broadband, Communications and the Digital Economy

Relevant Legislation:

Australian Postal Corporation Act 1989

National Transmission Network Sale Act 1998

Telecommunications Act 1997

Telstra Corporation Act 1991

6. Defence Buildings

6.1 Administering Agency:

Department of Defence

Relevant Legislation:

Defence Act 1903

Defence (Areas Control) Regulations 1989

Infrastructure Management

Defence Safety Manual

Contamination Manual

Defence Energy, Water and Waste Strategy

Manual of Fire Protection Engineering

Requirements for the Provision of Disabled Access and other Facilities for Disabled Persons in Defence Facilities

Defence Green Building Requirements

7. Disability Discrimination

7.1 Administering Agency:

Attorney-General's Department

Relevant Legislation:

Disability Discrimination Act 1992

8. Environment

8.1 Administering Agency:

Department of Sustainability, Environment, Water, Population and Communities

Relevant Legislation:

Environmental Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999

8.2 Administering Agency:

Department of Climate Change and Energy Efficiency

Relevant Policy:

Energy Efficiency in Government Operations (2006)

9. Federal Airports**9.1 Administering Agency:**

Department of Infrastructure and Transport

Relevant Legislation:

Airports Act 1996

Airports Regulations 1997

Airports (Building Control) Regulations 1996

Airports (Control of On-Airport Activities) Regulations 1997

Airports (Environmental Protection) Regulations 1997

10. Jervis Bay Territory**10.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Regional Australia, Regional Development and Local Government

Relevant Legislation

Jervis Bay Territory Acceptance Act 1915

11. Occupational Health and Safety**11.1 Administering Agency:**

Department of Education, Employment and Workplace Relations

Relevant Legislation:

Occupational Health and Safety Act 1991

Occupational Health and Safety (Safety Standards) Regulations 1994

APPENDIX

AUSTRALIAN CAPITAL TERRITORY

INTRODUCTION

The Australian Capital Territory BCA Appendix forms part of the ACT Building Code published in accordance with the provisions of the ACT Building Act 2004. This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia which are necessary for the effective application of the Code in the Australian Capital Territory.

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX AUSTRALIAN CAPITAL TERRITORY

Australian Capital Territory

A GENERAL PROVISIONS

ACT Specification A1.3 Documents Adopted by Reference
ACT AO2 Objective
ACT AF2.1 - AF2.2 Functional Statements
ACT AP2.1 - ACT AP2.2 Performance Requirements
ACT A2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
ACT A2.101 Control of litter on building sites
ACT A2.102 Waste management

D ACCESS AND EGRESS

ACT D1.101 Notices on fire-isolated stairs

G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

ACT G1.1 Swimming Pools
ACT G2.2 Installation of appliances

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

ACT J1.1 Sustainability

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1 INTERPRETATION

ACT Specification A1.3 DOCUMENTS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 the following:

ACT Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
AS 1375	1985	Industrial fuel-fired appliances	ACT G2.2
AS 1692	1989	Tanks for flammable and combustible liquids	ACT G2.2
Development Control Code for Best Practice Waste Management in the ACT			ACT A2.102

PART A2 ACCEPTANCE OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

Add ACT AO2 as follows:

OBJECTIVE

ACT AO2

The *Objective* of this Part is to—

- (a) prevent wind blown litter from building sites fouling roads and public land; and
- (b) safeguard people from injury caused by infection or contamination from solid waste.

Add ACT AF2.1 to ACT AF2.2 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS

ACT AF2.1

Building litter must be prevented from spreading around and beyond the allotment boundary.

ACT AF2.2

Buildings must be provided with space and facilities for the collection, and safe, hygienic holding prior to disposal of solid waste arising from the intended use of the building.

Add ACT AP2.1 to ACT AP2.2 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

ACT AP2.1

Sufficient containers must be provided on building sites to store building waste that is likely to become windblown.

ACT AP2.2

Provision must be made within buildings for the collection and temporary holding of solid waste. The design must accommodate screening, volume of waste, disposal, logistics and access.

Add ACT A2.0 as follows:

ACT A2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements **ACT AP2.1** to **ACT AP2.2** are satisfied by complying with **ACT A2.101** to **ACT A2.102**.

Add ACT A2.101 to ACT A2.103 as follows:

ACT A2.101 Control of litter on building sites

- (a) On-site building waste must be stored in suitable size plastic or metal bins and removed from the allotment at regular intervals.
- (b) For the purpose of this clause, building waste includes plastic containers, plastic and paper wrappings, or any waste that can be carried by wind.

ACT A2.102 Waste management

Garbage facilities must be designed and constructed in accordance with the Development Control Code for Best Practice Waste Management in the ACT.

SECTION D ACCESS AND EGRESS

PART D1 PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

Add ACT D1.101 as follows:

ACT D1.101 Notices on fire-isolated stairs

- (a) Every *fire-isolated stairway* must have a notice displayed in a conspicuous position at the landing on each *storey* level to the effect of the following:

OFFENCES RELATING TO FIRE STAIRS

Under the Emergencies Act 2004 it is an offence to:

1. Place anything in this stairway or any associated passageway leading to the exterior of the building which may impede the free passage of persons; or
2. Interfere with or cause obstruction or impediment to the normal operation of fire doors providing access to this stairway; or
3. Remove, damage or otherwise interfere with this notice.

- (b) In any notice displayed in accordance with (a)—
- (i) the words "OFFENCES RELATING TO FIRE STAIRS" must be in letters not less than 20 mm in height; and
 - (ii) all other letters and figures in the remainder of the notice must be not less than 3 mm in height; and
 - (iii) the notice must be clearly legible with lettering of a colour contrasting with the background embossed or cast into a permanent plate securely and permanently fixed to the wall.

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

Add ACT G1.1(f) and (g) as follows:

ACT G1.1 Swimming Pools

- (f) Indoor or outdoor permanent bathing, wading and *swimming pools* must—
- (i) where the capacity of the pool exceeds 10 m³—
 - (A) be of the recirculation type in which the water circulation is maintained through the pool by pumps, the water drawn from the pool being clarified and disinfected before being returned to the pool; and
 - (B) have means of egress provided in the form of ladders, steps in the floor of the pool or a ramp; and
 - (ii) be capable of being completely emptied and any discharge or overflow and pool backwash filter must be connected to the sewer drainage system.

- (g) Pools in or forming part of buildings other than Class 1 buildings—
- (i) where in any part of the pool the depth is less than 1500 mm, the floor grade must not exceed a slope of 1 in 20; and
 - (ii) permanent signs must be displayed on the side of the pool (or adjacent concourse for flush concourse waterline pools), showing the depth at 300 mm change intervals for the length of the pool and the depth at the deep and shallow ends.

PART G2 HEATING APPLIANCES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES

Add ACT G2.2 as follows:

ACT G2.2 Installation of appliances

- (d) An industrial fuel-fired appliance: AS 1375.
- (e) Storage tanks and other associated fittings: AS 1692.

SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

ACT J1.1 SUSTAINABILITY

Note:

Other ACT legislation also regulates for sustainability when constructing or altering buildings, including their services. For example, the *Water and Sewerage Act 2000* has relevant provisions in relation to water heaters, water and sanitary plumbing, and sanitary drainage, which are intended to facilitate a reduction in water usage and energy used to heat water, and greenhouse gas emission. The *Building (General) Regulation 2004* has provisions about applying certain BCA provisions, and alternatives to those provisions, to pre-existing parts of certain buildings, aimed at increasing the energy efficiency of the pre-existing part, amongst other things, when the pre-existing building is substantially altered or extended.

Practitioners should ensure they check the latest version of relevant legislation, and the latest version of this appendix, available through the ACT legislation register at www.legislation.act.gov.au.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Building Act 2004 and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Construction Occupations

1.1 Administering Agency

Environment and Sustainable Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Construction Occupations (Licensing) Act 2004

2. Dangerous Substances

2.1 Administering Agency

Chief Minister and Cabinet Directorate

Justice and Community Safety Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Dangerous Substances Act 2004

3. Electricity and Gas Safety

3.1 Administering Agency

Environment and Sustainable Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Electricity Safety Act 1971

Gas Safety Act 2000

4. Environmental Protection and Nature Conservation

4.1 Administering Agency

Territory and Municipal Services Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Environment Protection Act 1997

Nature Conservation Act 1980

5. Fences and Party Walls

5.1 Administering Agency

Environment and Sustainable Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Common Boundaries Act 1981

6. Fire Safety

6.1 Administering Agency

Justice and Community Safety Directorate

Territory and Municipal Services Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Emergencies Act 2004

7. Heritage Conservation

7.1 Administering Agency

Territory and Municipal Services Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Heritage Act 2004

8. Land Use and Development Control

8.1 Administering Agency

Environment and Sustainable Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Planning and Development Act 2007

Unit Titles Act 2001

9. Liquor Premises

9.1 Administering Agency

Justice and Community Safety Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Liquor Act 2010

10. Machinery, Scaffolding and Lifts

10.1 Administering Agency

Chief Minister and Cabinet Directorate

Justice and Community Safety Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Machinery Act 1949

Scaffolding and Lifts Act 1912

11. Occupational Health and Safety

11.1 Administering Agency

Chief Minister and Cabinet Directorate

Justice and Community Safety Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Work Safety Act 2008

12. Plumbing and Drainage

12.1 Administering Agency

Environment and Sustainable Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Water and Sewerage Act 2000

13. Public Health

13.1 Administering Agency

ACT Health

Relevant Legislation

Public Health Act 1997

14. Roads and Public Places

14.1 Administering Agency

Territory and Municipal Services Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Roads and Public Places Act 1937

15. Utilities

15.1 Administering Agency

Environment and Sustainable Development Directorate

Justice and Community Safety Directorate

Territory and Municipal Services Directorate

Treasury Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Utilities Act 2000

16. Waste

16.1 Administering Agency

Territory and Municipal Services Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Waste Minimisation Act 2001

17. Water and Sewerage

17.1 Administering Agency

Environment and Sustainable Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation

Water and Sewerage Act 2000

APPENDIX

NEW SOUTH WALES

INTRODUCTION

The NSW Building Code technical package consists of-

- (i) the Building Code of Australia (BCA) Volume One and Volume Two; and
- (ii) the New South Wales BCA Appendix which contains variations to the requirements of the BCA and additional provisions applicable in New South Wales.

The technical package is accompanied by administrative provisions contained within the Environmental Planning and Assessment (EP & A) Act 1979 and the Environmental Planning and Assessment (EP & A) Regulation 2000.

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX NEW SOUTH WALES

New South Wales

A GENERAL PROVISIONS

- NSW A1.1 Definitions
- NSW A3.2 Classifications
- NSW Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

C FIRE RESISTANCE

- NSW C1.10 Fire hazard properties
- NSW C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings
- NSW C3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2, 3, 4 and 9b buildings
- NSW Specification C1.10 Fire Hazard Properties

D ACCESS AND EGRESS

- NSW D1.2 Number of exits required
- NSW D1.6 Dimensions of exits
- NSW D1.10 Discharge from exits
- NSW Table 1.13 Area per person according to use
- NSW D2.1 Application of Part
- NSW D2.13 Treads and risers
- NSW D2.15 Thresholds
- NSW D2.16 Balustrades or other barriers
- NSW D2.19 Doorways and doors
- NSW D2.21 Operation of latch
- NSW D2.101 Doors in path of travel in an entertainment venue

E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

- NSW Table E2.2a General Provisions
- NSW Table E2.2b Specific Provisions
- NSW Specification E2.2a Smoke Detectors and Alarm Systems
- NSW E4.6 Direction signs

F HEALTH AND AMENITY

- NSW FF2.1 Functional Statements
- NSW FP2.6 Performance Requirements
- NSW F2.7 Microbial (legionella) control
- NSW F4.5 Ventilation of rooms

G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

NSW G1.101 Provision for cleaning windows
 NSW G05 Objective
 NSW GF5.1 Functional Statement
 NSW GP5.1 Performance Requirements
 NSW G5.2 Protection

H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

NSW H1.1 Application of Part

NSW Part H101 ENTERTAINMENT VENUES OTHER THAN TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND DRIVE-IN THEATRES

NSW H101.1 Application of Part
 NSW H101.2 Fire separation
 NSW H101.3 Foyer space
 NSW H101.4 Sprinkler systems for common foyers
 NSW H101.5 Conventional stages
 NSW H101.6 Non-conventional stages
 NSW H101.7 Flying scenery
 NSW H101.8 Load notice
 NSW H101.9 * * * * *
 NSW H101.10 Safety curtains
 NSW H101.11 Seating in rows
 NSW H101.12 Continental seating
 NSW H101.13 Provision of guardrails
 NSW H101.14 Guardrails
 NSW H101.15 Dressing rooms
 NSW H101.16 Storerooms
 NSW H101.17 Projection suites
 NSW H101.18 Basement storeys
 NSW H101.19 Electric mains installation
 NSW H101.20 Lighting
 NSW H101.21 * * * * *
 NSW H101.22 Automatic smoke-and-heat vents for stages
 NSW H101.23 Solid fuel burning stoves and open fire places
 NSW H101.24 Fuel gas cylinders

NSW Part H102 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

NSW H102.1 Application of Part
 NSW H102.2 Exits — Exclusions
 NSW H102.3 Location of exits
 NSW H102.4 Exits to be provided
 NSW H102.5 Vertical clearances for exits
 NSW H102.6 Curtains across exits
 NSW H102.7 Curtains and blinds
 NSW H102.8 Fabrics
 NSW H102.9 Guardrails
 NSW H102.10 Seating
 NSW H102.11 Sanitary accommodation
 NSW H102.12 Projection suites
 NSW H102.13 Fireplaces and heating
 NSW H102.14 Electrical services

NSW H102.15 Artificial lighting
NSW H102.16 Exit signs
NSW H102.17 Fire-fighting services

NSW Part H103 DRIVE-IN THEATRES

NSW H103.1 Application of Part
NSW H103.2 Speaker standards
NSW H103.3 Electrical services
NSW H103.4 Vehicular entrances
NSW H103.5 Lighting

I MAINTENANCE

NSW I1.1 Essential fire safety measures
NSW I1.2 Mechanical ventilation and hot water, warm water and cooling water systems
NSW I2 Energy Efficiency Installations

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

NSW SUBSECTION J(A) ENERGY EFFICIENCY - CLASS 2 BUILDINGS AND CLASS 4 PARTS

NSW J(A)O1 Objective
NSW J(A)F1 Functional Statement
NSW J(A)P1 to NSW J(A)P4 Performance Requirements

NSW J(A)1 BUILDING FABRIC

NSW J(A)1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)1.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)1.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

NSW J(A)2 BUILDING SEALING

NSW J(A)2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)2.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)2.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

NSW J(A)3 AIR-CONDITIONING AND VENTILATING SYSTEMS

NSW J(A)3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)3.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)3.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

NSW J(A)4 HOT WATER SUPPLY

NSW J(A)4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)4.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)4.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

NSW J(A)5 ACCESS FOR MAINTENANCE AND FACILITIES FOR MONITORING

NSW J(A)5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)5.1 Application of Part

NSW J(A)5.2 Access for maintenance

NSW J(A)5.3 Compliance with BCA provisions

NSW SUBSECTION J(B) ENERGY EFFICIENCY - CLASS 3 AND CLASS 5 TO 9 BUILDINGS

NSW J(B)1 Compliance with BCA provisions

NSW J3.1 Application of Part

NSW J8.2 Access for maintenance

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1 INTERPRETATION

NSW A1.1 Definitions

Insert definition for *aisle* as follows:

Aisle means a walkway at the end of rows of seating, not being *continental seating*, leading to a cross-over or to an egress doorway.

Insert definition of *assembly building* as follows:

Assembly building means a building where people may assemble for—

- (a) civic, theatrical, social, political or religious purposes including a library, theatre, public hall or place of worship; or
- (b) educational purposes in a *school*, *early childhood centre*, preschool, or the like; or
- (c) entertainment, recreational or sporting purposes including—
 - (i) a cinema; or
 - (ii) a sports stadium, sporting or other club; or
- (d) transit purposes including a bus station, railway station, airport or ferry terminal.

Insert definition for *auditorium* as follows:

Auditorium means a part of an *entertainment venue* used or intended to be used for the purposes of accommodating an audience to an entertainment.

Insert definition of *continental seating* as follows:

Continental seating means rows of seating in which the rows extend the full width of an *auditorium* without intervening *aisles*.

Insert definition of *cross-over* as follows:

Cross-over in relation to an *entertainment venue* or *temporary structure*, means a walkway between *aisles* or between an *aisle* and an egress doorway.

Vary definition for *designated bushfire prone area* as follows:

Designated bushfire prone area means land that:

- (a) has been designated under legislation; or
- (b) has been identified under an environmental planning instrument, development control plan or in the course of processing and determining a development application,

as land that can support a bushfire or is likely to be subject to bushfire attack.

Vary definition for *early childhood centre* as follows:

Early childhood centre means a preschool, kindergarten or child-minding centre for the care or training of more than 5 children.

Insert definition for *entertainment venue* as follows:

Entertainment venue is as defined in the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000.

Insert definition of *film* as follows:

Film means a cinematograph *film* of a size of 35 mm or greater.

Insert definition of *flying scenery* as follows:

Flying scenery means scenery of a kind that is lifted above the *stage* floor by means of lines run from a *grid*.

Insert definition of *grid* as follows:

Grid means a framework from which lines are run for the purpose of lifting *flying scenery* above the *stage* floor.

Insert definition of *minimum lateral clearance* as follows:

Minimum lateral clearance means a permanently unobstructed space having a height above floor level of not less than 2000 mm and a width of not less than the specified measurement.

Insert definition of *projection suite* as follows:

Projection suite means such part of an *entertainment venue* as is designed to accommodate apparatus used for projecting *films*.

Insert definition of *row* as follows:

Row means a row of seating—

- (a) between a wall or other barrier and an *aisle*; or
- (b) between 2 *aisles*.

Insert definition of *special fire protection purpose* as follows:

Special fire protection purpose (as per Section 100B(6) of the Rural Fires Act 1997) means any of the following purposes:

- (a) a school,
- (b) a child care centre,
- (c) a hospital (including a hospital for the mentally ill or mentally disordered),
- (d) a hotel, motel or other tourist accommodation,
- (e) a building wholly or principally used as a home or other establishment for mentally incapacitated persons,
- (f) housing for older people or people with disabilities within the meaning of State Environmental Planning Policy No 5 - Housing for Older People or People with a Disability (now SEPP (Housing for Seniors or People with a Disability) 2004),
- (g) a group home within the meaning of State Environmental Planning Policy No 9 - Group Homes (now SEPP (Affordable Housing) 2009),
- (h) a retirement village,
- (i) any other purpose prescribed by the regulations (Rural Fires Regulation 2008).

Note: For application of this definition in the BCA, the term "school" does not include a college, university or similar tertiary educational establishment.

Insert definition of *temporary structure* as follows:

Temporary structure means—

- (a) a booth, tent or other temporary enclosure, whether or not a part of the booth, tent or enclosure is permanent; or
- (b) a mobile structure.

NSW A3.2 Classifications

In A3.2 replace the definition of **Class 6** as follows:

Class 6: a shop or other building for the sale of goods by retail or the supply of services direct to the public, including—

- (a) an eating room, cafe, restaurant, milk or soft-drink bar; or
- (b) a dining room, bar, shop or kiosk part of a hotel or motel; or
- (c) a hairdresser's or barber's shop, public laundry, or undertaker's establishment; or
- (d) market or sale room, showroom, or *service station*.

NSW Specification A1.3 DOCUMENTS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

In Table 1, insert additional reference as follows:

NSW Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause
AS/NZS 1596	2002	The Storage and Handling of LP Gas	NSW H101.24.1
AS 2001 Part 5.4	1987	Methods of test for textiles Determination of dimensional change in laundering of textile fabrics and garments — Automatic machine method	NSW Specification C1.10
AS/NZS 3000	2000	Electrical installations — Buildings, structures and premises (SAA wiring rules)	NSW H102.14
AS 3002	1985	Electrical installations — Shows and carnivals	NSW H102.14
SSL		Appraisal Specification FAS102	NSW H101.17.1
NSW Legislation	1979	Environmental Planning and Assessment Act	NSW G5.2, NSW J(A)P1, NSW J(A)1.1
NSW Legislation	2000	Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation	NSW A1.1, NSW H101.1, NSW H101.17.1, NSW I1.1
NSW Legislation	1997	Rural Fires Act	NSW A1.1, NSW G5.2

NSW Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS (Continued)

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause
NSW Legislation	1992	Swimming Pools Act	GF1.2 Application in NSW, GP1.2 Application in NSW, G1.1
NSW Legislation	2008	Swimming Pools Regulation	GF1.2 Application in NSW, GP1.2 Application in NSW, G1.1

SECTION C FIRE RESISTANCE

PART C1 FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

Delete C1.10(a)(v), C1.10(b) and C1.10(c)(xiii) and insert NSW C1.10(a)(v), NSW C1.10(b) and NSW C1.10(c)(xiii) as follows:

NSW C1.10 Fire hazard properties

- (a) The *fire hazard properties* of the following linings, materials and assemblies in a Class 2 to 9 building must comply with **Specification C1.10**:
 - (v) In Class 9b buildings used as—
 - (A) an *entertainment venue*, a material used to cover closed back upholstered seats; and
 - (B) a public hall or the like, a proscenium curtain *required* by **Specification H1.3**.
- (b) Paint or fire-retardant coatings must not be used in order to make a material comply with a *required fire hazard property*, except in respect of a material referred to in **NSW Specification C1.10**, **NSW Table 4** and to which Notes 4 and 5 are applicable.
- (c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to a material or assembly if it is—
 - (xiii) an attached non-building fixture and fitting such as—
 - (A) a curtain, blind, or similar decor, other than—
 - (aa) a proscenium curtain *required* by **Specification H1.3**; or
 - (bb) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, a material that is regulated under **NSW Table 4**; and
 - (B) a whiteboard, *window* treatment or the like; or

PART C2 COMPARTMENTATION AND SEPARATION

Delete C2.5(b) and insert NSW C2.5(b) as follows:

NSW C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings

- (b) A Class 9c *aged care building* must comply with the following:
- (i) A building must be divided into areas not more than 500 m² by smoke proof walls complying with **Specification C2.5**.
 - (ii) A *fire compartment* must be separated from the remainder of the building by *fire walls* and notwithstanding **Specification C1.1**, floors with an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.
 - (iii) Except for walls provided in accordance with (b)(i) and (ii), non-loadbearing *internal walls*, and if a building is of Type C construction — all *internal walls*, between and bounding *sole-occupancy-units* and bounding a *public corridor* in a *resident use area* must:
 - (A) be lined on each side with standard grade plasterboard not less than 13 mm thick or a material with at least an equivalent level of fire protection; and
 - (B) if provided with cavity insulation, contain only *non-combustible* insulation; and
 - (C) extend to the underside of—
 - (aa) the floor next above; or
 - (bb) a ceiling lined with standard grade plasterboard not less than 13 mm thick or an equivalent non-combustible material; or
 - (cc) a *non-combustible* roof covering; and
 - (D) not incorporate any penetrations above door head height unless the penetrations are adequately stopped to prevent the free passage of smoke; and
 - (E) be smoke sealed with intumescent putty or other suitable material at any construction joint, space or the like between the top of the wall and the floor, ceiling or roof.
 - (iv) *Loadbearing internal walls* must comply with the requirements of **Specification C1.1** and paragraphs (iii)(B), (C), (D) and (E) above.
 - (v) Ancillary use areas containing equipment or materials that are a high potential *fire hazard*, must be separated from the *sole-occupancy-units* by smoke proof walls complying with **Specification C2.5**.
 - (vi) The ancillary use areas referred to in (v) include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - (A) A kitchen and related food preparation areas having a combined *floor area* of more than 30 m².
 - (B) A laundry, where items of equipment are of the type that are potential fire sources (eg gas fire dryers).

- (C) Storage rooms greater than 10 m² used predominantly for the storage of administrative records.
- (vii) Openings in *fire walls* must be protected as follows:
 - (A) Doorways — *self-closing* or *automatic* closing –/60/30 fire doors.
 - (B) Windows — *automatic* or permanently fixed closed –/60/– fire windows or –/60/– *automatic* fire shutters.
 - (C) Other openings — construction having an FRL not less than –/60/–.

PART C3 PROTECTION OF OPENINGS

Delete C3.11(d) and insert NSW C3.11(d) as follows:

NSW C3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2, 3, 4 and 9b buildings

- (d) Protection for a doorway *required* under (a), (b) or (c) must be at least—
 - (i) in a building of Type A construction — a *self-closing* –/60/30 fire door; and
 - (ii) in a building of Type B or C construction — a *self-closing*, tight fitting, solid core door not less than 35 mm thick,
 except—
 - (iii) in a Class 3 building used as a *residential aged care building*—
 - (A) of Type A construction not protected by a sprinkler system — a –/60/30 fire door; or
 - (B) either—
 - (aa) of Type B or C construction; or
 - (bb) protected with a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5**,
a tight fitting, solid core door not less than 35 mm thick.
 - (iv) The doors referred to in (iii) must be—
 - (A) *self-closing*; or
 - (B) fitted with a free-arm action closing device which closes the door or causes the door to remain closed (without preventing manual re-opening), upon the detection of smoke by a detector located—
 - (aa) in a building protected with a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5** — within the room; or
 - (bb) in a building not protected by a sprinkler system — within the room, and adjacent to the door in any common area or corridor to which the door opens.

Insert NSW C3.11(h) as follows:

- (h) In a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, openings in construction *required* to separate one space from another must be protected in accordance with **C3.4**.

NSW Specification C1.10

FIRE HAZARD PROPERTIES

Delete Clause 7 and Table 4 and insert NSW Clause 7 and NSW Table 4

NSW 7. Other materials

Materials and assemblies in a Class 2 to 9 building not included in **Clauses 3, 4, 5 or 6** must not exceed the indices set out in **NSW Table 4**.

NSW Table 4 OTHER MATERIALS

Material or assembly location	Flammability Index	Spread-of-Flame Index	Smoke-Developed Index
Fire control rooms subject to Specification E1.8 and fire-isolated <i>exits</i> , other than a <i>sarking-type material</i> used in a ceiling or used as an attachment or part of an attachment to a building element. <small>Note 1</small>	—	0	2
Class 9b buildings used as an <i>entertainment venue</i> . <small>Note 4</small>			
(a) A material used to cover closed back upholstered seats in any part available to the public where—			
(i) smoking is permitted; or	—	6	5
(ii) flame is exposed in connection with the preparation of meals.	—	6	5
(b) A material used as a curtain, blind or similar decor in any part available to the public. <small>Note 5</small>	6	—	—
(c) A material used to form a cinematograph screen <small>Note 5 and 6</small>	12	0	7
Class 9b buildings used as a public hall or the like, a proscenium curtain <i>required by Specification H1.3</i>	—	0	3
Escalators, moving walkways or <i>non-required non-fire-isolated stairways</i> or pedestrian ramps subject to Specification D1.12 .	—	0	5
<i>Sarking-type material</i> :			
(a) In a fire control room subject to Specification E1.8 or a fire-isolated <i>exit</i> used in the form of an exposed wall or ceiling.	0	—	—
(b) In other locations. <small>Note 2</small>	5	—	—

NSW Table 4 OTHER MATERIALS (Continued)

Material or assembly location	Flammability Index	Spread-of-Flame Index	Smoke-Developed Index
Other materials or locations and insulation materials other than <i>sarking-type materials</i> . <small>Notes 2 and 3</small>	—	9	8 if the <i>Spread-of-Flame Index</i> is more than 5
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In a fire control room or <i>fire-isolated stairway</i>, a material used as an attachment or part of an attachment to a building element must, if <i>combustible</i>, be attached directly to a <i>non-combustible</i> substrate and not exceed 1 mm finished thickness A material, other than one located within a fire-isolated <i>exit</i> or fire control room, may be covered on all faces by concrete or masonry not less than 50 mm thick, as an alternative to meeting the specified indices. In the case of a composite member or assembly, the member or assembly must be constructed so that when assembled as proposed in a building— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> any material which does not comply with this Table is protected on all sides and edges from exposure to the air; and the member or assembly, when tested in accordance with Specification A2.4, has a <i>Spread-of-Flame Index</i> and a <i>Smoke-Developed Index</i> not exceeding those prescribed in this Table; and the member or assembly retains the protection in position so that it prevents ignition of the material and continues to screen it from access to free air for a period of not less than 10 minutes. Any fire-retardant coating used in an <i>entertainment venue</i> to make a material subject to (a), (b) or (c) comply with a <i>required Flammability Index</i>, <i>Spread-of-Flame Index</i> or <i>Smoke-Developed Index</i> must be certified by— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> its manufacturer or distributor— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> as approved for use with the fabric to achieve the <i>required</i> indices; and to retain its retardancy effect after a minimum of 5 commercial dry cleaning or laundering operations carried out in accordance with AS 2001.5.4, Procedure 7A, using ECE reference detergent; and the applicator as having been carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's specification. Materials subject to (b) or (c) must have a label affixed to a representative sample of each different material indicating, in legible characters— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> name of manufacturer; and trade name and description of material's composition; and retardant treatment (if any), name of applicator and date of application; and 			

NSW Table 4 OTHER MATERIALS (Continued)

Material or assembly location	Flammability Index	Spread-of-Flame Index	Smoke-Developed Index
(d) AS 1530 Part 2 and/or AS/NZS 1530 Part 3 test number and its <i>Flammability Index</i> , <i>Spread-of-Flame Index</i> and <i>Smoke-Developed Index</i> ; and			
(e) approved methods of cleaning.			
6. A cinematograph screen must have a supporting frame of metal construction.			

SECTION D ACCESS AND EGRESS

PART D1 PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

Add D1.2(d)(vii) as follows:

NSW D1.2 Number of exits required

(d)

(vii) any storey or mezzanine within an auditorium in an entertainment venue.

Insert NSW D1.6(f)(vi), and (i) as follows:

NSW D1.6 Dimensions of exits

(f)

(vi) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*—

(A) in parts of the building used by the public, the width of the *required exit* or path of travel, and the unobstructed width of each doorway must not be less than 1 m and not more than 3 m; and

(B) in other parts of the building, doorways must comply with **D1.6(f)**.

(i) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*—

(i) the aggregate width must be not less than 2 m plus 500 mm for every 50 persons or part in excess of 200; and

(ii) **D1.6(b)**, **(c)** and **(d)** do not apply; and

(iii) where one or more paths of travel merge, the width of the combined path of travel must be not less than the sum of the *required* widths of those paths of travel; and

(iv) the *required* widths of the paths of travel connecting the *exits* from the building to a public road or *open space* must comply with (iii).

Delete D1 10(f) and insert NSW D1.10(f) as follows:

NSW D1.10 Discharge from exits

- (f) In a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, at least half of the *required* number of *exits* from each *storey* or *mezzanine*, and at least half of the aggregate width of such *exits* must discharge otherwise than through the main entrance, or the area immediately adjacent to the main entrance of the building.

Vary Table D1.13 as follows:

NSW Table D1.13 AREA PER PERSON ACCORDING TO USE

Type of use	m ² per person
Delete "Theatres and public halls" and insert the following:	
Entertainment venue—	
other than <i>auditorium</i>	1.2
<i>Auditorium—</i>	
standing area	0.5
removable seating	1.0
fixed seating	count seats
bench seating	450 mm/person

PART D2 CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

Add NSW D2.1(c) as follows:

NSW D2.1 Application of Part

In addition—

- (c) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*—
- Clauses NSW D2.13(a)(ix), (a)(x), and (a)(xi), NSW D2.15(c), NSW D2.16(f)(v), and NSW D2.19(b)(v)** apply to only those parts of the building used by the public; and
 - the general requirements of **Part D2** apply to all other parts of the building.

Insert NSW D2.13(a)(ix), (a)(x) and (a)(xi) as follows:

NSW D2.13 Treads and risers

- (a)
- conspicuous edges to the treads of steps in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*; and
 - in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, not more than one helical stairway serving as a *required exit* and that stairway must—
 - have a width of not less than 1500 mm; and
 - be of constant radius; and

- (C) be constructed so that each tread, when measured 500 mm in from its narrow end, has a width of at least 280 mm; and
- (xi) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, in a curved stairway serving as a *required exit*— an internal radius of not less than twice the width of the stair.

Renumber D2.15(c) to (d) and insert NSW D2.15(c) as follows:

NSW D2.15 Thresholds

- (c) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, the door sill of a doorway opening to a road, *open space*, external stair landing or external balcony is not more than 50 mm above the finished floor level to which the doorway opens; or
- (d) in other cases—
 - (i) the doorway opens to a road or *open space*, external stair landing or external balcony; and
 - (ii) the door sill is not more than 190 mm above the finished surface of the ground, balcony, or the like, to which the doorway opens.

Delete D2.16(g)(iv) and insert NSW D2.16(g)(iv) and (v) as follows:

NSW D2.16 Balustrades or other barriers

- (g)
 - (iv) For a balustrade or other barrier provided under (f), the height above the floor must be not less than—
 - (A) 1 m; or
 - (B) 700 mm and a horizontal projection that extends not less than 1 m outwards from the top of the balustrade; or
 - (C) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, the height prescribed for guardrails in **NSW H101.14.2** and **NSW H102.9**.
 - (v) For a balustrade in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, the height above the nosings of the stair treads and the floors of ramps, and the floor of any access path, balcony, landing or the like, is not less than—
 - (A) 1 m when provided inside the building; and
 - (B) 1200 mm when provided externally to the building.

Insert NSW D2.19(b)(v) as follows:

NSW D2.19 Doorways and doors

- (b)
 - (v) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*—
 - (A) must not be fitted with a collapsible gate, accordion door, turnstile or rigid barrier; and
 - (B) if fitted with a door, must be—

- (aa) a swing door which opens in the direction of egress; and
- (bb) doors hung in two folds where the unobstructed width of the doorway is more than 1 m; and
- (C) a doorway or opening within sight of the audience but not intended for egress must have a notice displayed clearly indicating its purpose and such a notice must not be internally illuminated; and
- (D) notwithstanding (b)(iii), a sliding door may be fitted where—
 - (aa) it leads directly to a road or *open space* and forms a main entrance; and
 - (bb) it is capable of swinging in the direction of egress when pressure is applied to the inside face of the door; and
 - (cc) the door is provided with signage that clearly indicates to persons seeking egress, the potential for swinging the door open in an emergency.

Delete D2.21(b) and insert NSW D2.21(b) and (c) as follows:

NSW D2.21 Operation of latch

- (b) The requirements of (a) do not apply in a Class 9b building (other than a *school*, an *early childhood centre* or a building used for religious purposes) to a door in a *required exit*, forming part of a *required exit* or in the path of travel to a *required exit* serving a storey or room accommodating more than 100 persons, determined in accordance with D1.13, in which case it must be readily openable—
 - (i) without a key from the side that faces a person seeking egress; and
 - (ii) by a single hand pushing action on a single device such as a panic bar located between 900 mm and 1.1 m from the floor; and
 - (iii) where a two-leaf door is fitted, the provisions of (i) and (ii) need only apply to one door leaf if the appropriate requirements of D1.6 are satisfied by the opening of that one leaf; and
 - (iv) where the door is a door in a path of travel providing re-entry to the building from a balcony, terrace or the like, it may be fitted with key-operated fastenings only, the tongues of which must be locked in the retracted position whenever the building is occupied by the public, so the door can yield to pressure.
- (c) The requirements of (a) and (b) do not apply to a door serving a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue* where the following provisions apply to a door or gate used by the public—
 - (i) on a door, the single device operating the latch or bolts must be a panic bar if those doors are to be secured; or
 - (ii) an *exit door* or gate used by the public as the main entrance may be fitted with key-operated fastenings only, the tongues of which must be locked in the retracted position whenever the building is occupied by the public so the door or gate can yield to pressure from within; or

- (iii) a door from a balcony, terrace or the like, being a door in a path of travel providing re-entry to the building, may comply with the locking provision of (ii) above.

Add NSW D2.101 as follows:

NSW D2.101 Doors in path of travel in an entertainment venue

In a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, a doorway in a path of travel must comply with **NSW D2.19(b)(v)**.

SECTION E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

PART E2 SMOKE HAZARD MANAGEMENT

NSW Table E2.2a General Provisions

BCA Table E2.2a is applicable in NSW except for subclause (a) of the "Large isolated buildings" provisions.

Delete Table E2.2b Class 9b Assembly buildings and substitute NSW Table E2.2b Class 9b buildings as follows:

NSW Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS

CLASS 6 BUILDINGS - IN FIRE COMPARTMENTS MORE THAN 2000 m²:
The provisions of BCA Table E2.2b for Class 6 buildings are applicable in NSW.
CLASS 9b BUILDINGS
CLASS 9b - ASSEMBLY BUILDINGS
The following provisions apply to all Class 9b <i>assembly buildings</i> :
<p>(a) Automatic shutdown:</p> <p>A building or part of a building used as an <i>assembly building</i> must be provided with <i>automatic</i> shutdown of any air-handling system (other than non-ducted individual room units with a capacity not more than 1000 l/s and miscellaneous exhaust air systems installed in accordance with Sections 5 and 11 of AS/NZS 1668.1) which does not form part of the smoke hazard management system, on the activation of—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) smoke detectors installed complying with Clause 5 of Specification E2.2a; and (ii) any other installed fire detection and alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

NSW Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS (Continued)**(b) Basements:**

A basement not counted in the *rise in storeys* in accordance with **C1.2**, less than 2000 m² used as an *assembly building* or part of an *assembly building* containing an *auditorium* or other public area, must be equipped with—

- (i) an *automatic* smoke detection system in accordance with **Specification E2.2a**; or
- (ii) an *automatic* zone smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1 if the basement has more than one *fire compartment*; or if the basement forms part of a multi *fire compartmented* building served by the zone smoke control system; or
- (iii) a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5**.

(c) Stages and backstages:

- (i) For the purposes of this Table, where a *stage* is separated from the *auditorium* by a proscenium wall incorporating a proscenium opening, a backstage room or area that is not separated from the *stage* by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60, is taken to form part of the *stage*.
- (ii) A building or part of a building used as an *assembly building* which has a *stage*—

(A) with a *floor area* of more than 50 m² and not more than 150 m² must, over the *stage*, be provided with—

- (aa) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with **Specification E2.2b** (including **Figure 2.1**); or
- (bb) roof mounted *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with **NSW H101.22**, in a single *storey* building or the top *storey* of a multi *storey* building; or

(B) with a *floor area* of more than 150 m² must, over the *stage*, be provided with an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with **Specification E2.2b** (including **Figure 2.1**); or

(C) equipped with means of *flying scenery* must, over the *stage*, be provided with an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with **Specification E2.2b** (including **Figure 2.1**).

NSW Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS (Continued)**NIGHT CLUBS, DISCOTHEQUES, AND THE LIKE**

A building or part of a building being a night club, discotheque or the like, must be provided with—

- (a) in an *auditorium*—
 - (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with **Specification E2.2b**; or
 - (ii) roof mounted *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with **Specification E2.2c**, in a single *storey* building or the top *storey* of a multi *storey* building; or
 - (iii) a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5** with fast response sprinkler heads; and
- (b) in all other areas—
 - (i) where a building or part of a building has a *floor area* not more than 2000 m²—
 - (A) one of the smoke hazard management measures listed under (a) above; or
 - (B) an *automatic* smoke detection and alarm system complying with **Specification E2.2a**; or
 - (ii) where a building or part of a building has a *floor area* of more than 2000 m², smoke hazard management measures as provided for under 'Other Assembly Buildings' in **NSW Table E2.2b**.

Note: Paragraph (a) applies only to an *auditorium* designed principally to accommodate an audience to an entertainment.

EXHIBITION HALLS, MUSEUMS AND ART GALLERIES

A building or part of a building used as an exhibition hall, museum, art gallery or the like, must be provided with—

- (a) where the *floor area* is more than 2000 m² and not more than 3500 m²—
 - (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with **Specification E2.2b**; or
 - (ii) roof mounted *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with **Specification E2.2c** in a single *storey* building or the top *storey* of a multi *storey* building; or
 - (iii) a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5**; and
- (b) where the *floor area* is more than 3500 m², a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5** and—
 - (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with **Specification E2.2b**; or
 - (ii) roof mounted *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with **Specification E2.2c**, in a single *storey* building or the top *storey* of a multi *storey* building.

NSW Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS (Continued)

OTHER ASSEMBLY BUILDINGS	
(a)	<p>Unless otherwise described in (b), in a building or part of a building used as an <i>assembly building</i> (not being a night club, discotheque or the like; or an exhibition hall, museum or art gallery) where the <i>floor area</i> of a <i>fire compartment</i> is more than 2000 m², the <i>fire compartment</i> must be provided with—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) an <i>automatic</i> smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or (ii) roof mounted <i>automatic smoke-and-heat vents</i> complying with Specification E2.2c, in a single <i>storey</i> building or the top <i>storey</i> of a multi <i>storey</i> building; or (iii) if the <i>floor area</i> of the <i>fire compartment</i> is not more than 5000 m² and the building has a <i>rise in storeys</i> of not more than 2— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (A) an <i>automatic</i> smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or (B) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.
(b)	<p>The following buildings are exempt from the provisions of (a):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Sporting complexes, (including sports halls, gymnasiums, <i>swimming pools</i>, ice and roller rinks, and the like) other than indoor sports stadiums with total spectator seating for more than 1000 persons. (ii) Churches and other places used solely for religious worship. (iii) <i>School</i> classrooms.
<p>Note: Smoke hazard management provisions for an <i>assembly building</i> used for multiple purposes must comply with all the relevant provisions of NSW Table E2.2b according to usage.</p>	

NSW Specification E2.2a

SMOKE DETECTORS AND ALARM SYSTEMS

Delete Clause 7(e) as follows:

7. System Monitoring

(e) (deleted)

PART E4 EMERGENCY LIGHTING, EXIT SIGNS AND WARNING SYSTEMS

Delete E4.6 and insert NSW E4.6 as follows:

NSW E4.6 Direction signs

If an *exit* is not readily apparent to persons occupying or visiting the building, then *exit* signs must be installed—

- (a) in appropriate positions in corridors, hallways, lobbies, foyers, auditoria, and the like, indicating the *direction* to a *required exit*; and

- (b) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue* — in any external egress path to a street where the *exit* does not open directly onto a street.

SECTION F HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F2 SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

Delete FF2.1(b) and replace with NSW FF2.1(b):

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS

NSW FF2.1

(b) (deleted)

Note.

Paragraph (b) of this Functional Statement is deleted from the BCA in NSW, as the installation of hot water, warm water and cooling water systems (and their operation and maintenance) is regulated in the Public Health (Microbial Control) Regulation, 2000, as amended by the Public Health (Microbial Control) Amendment (Miscellaneous) Regulation, 2003, under the Public Health Act, 1991.

Delete FP2.6 (and Limitation) and replace with NSW FP2.6:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

NSW FP2.6

(deleted).

Note.

This Performance Requirement is deleted from the BCA in NSW, as the installation of hot water, warm water and cooling water systems (and their operation and maintenance) is regulated in the Public Health (Microbial Control) Regulation, 2000, as amended by the Public Health (Microbial Control) Amendment (Miscellaneous) Regulation, 2003, under the Public Health Act, 1991.

Delete F2.7:

NSW F2.7 Microbial (legionella) control

(deleted).

Note.

This clause is deleted from the BCA in NSW, as the installation of hot water, warm water and cooling water systems (and their operation and maintenance) is regulated in the Public Health (Microbial Control) Regulation, 2000, as amended by the Public Health (Microbial Control) Amendment (Miscellaneous) Regulation, 2003, under the Public Health Act, 1991.

PART F4 LIGHT AND VENTILATION

Delete F4.5(b) and insert NSW F4.5(b) as follows:

NSW F4.5 Ventilation of rooms

(b) a mechanical ventilation or air-conditioning system complying with AS 1668.2.

Note.

The reference to AS/NZS 3666.1 is deleted from the BCA in NSW, as the need to comply with this standard is regulated in the Public Health (Microbial Control) Regulation, 2000, as amended by the Public Health (Microbial Control) Amendment (Miscellaneous) Regulation, 2003, under the Public Health Act, 1991.

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

Add NSW G1.101 as follows:

NSW G1.101 Provision for cleaning windows

- (a) A building must provide for a safe manner of cleaning any *windows* located 3 or more *storeys* above ground level.
- (b) A building satisfies (a) where—
 - (i) the *windows* can be cleaned wholly from within the building; or
 - (ii) provision is made for the cleaning of the *windows* by a method complying with the Occupational Health and Safety Act 2000 and regulations made under that Act.

PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS

Delete GO5 and insert NSW GO5 as follows:

OBJECTIVE

NSW GO5

The *Objective* of this Part is to—

- (a) safeguard occupants from injury; and
 - (b) protect buildings,
- from the effects of bushfire.

Application

NSW GO5 only applies, in a *designated bushfire prone area*, to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building;
- (b) a Class 4 part of a building;
- (c) a Class 9 building that is a *special fire protection purpose*; or
- (d) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a building or part referred to in (a), (b) or (c).

Delete GF5.1 and insert NSW GF5.1 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT

NSW GF5.1

A building constructed in a *designated bushfire prone area* is to provide a resistance to bushfire in order to reduce the danger to life and minimise the risk of the loss of the building.

Application

NSW GF5.1 only applies, in a *designated bushfire prone area*, to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building;
- (b) a Class 4 part of a building;
- (c) a Class 9 building that is a *special fire protection purpose*; or
- (d) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a building or part referred to in (a), (b) or (c).

Delete GP5.1 and insert NSW GP5.1 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT

NSW GP5.1

A building that is constructed in a *designated bushfire prone area* must be designed and constructed to reduce the risk of ignition from a bushfire while the fire front passes.

Application

NSW GP5.1 only applies in a *designated bushfire prone area*, to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building;
- (b) a Class 4 part of a building;
- (c) a Class 9 building that is a *special fire protection purpose*; or
- (d) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a building or part referred to in (a), (b) or (c).

Delete G5.2 and insert NSW G5.2 as follows:

NSW G5.2 Protection

In a *designated bushfire prone area*, a Class 2 building, a Class 3 building, a Class 4 part of a building or a Class 9 building that is a *special fire protection purpose* or a Class 10a building or deck associated with such a building or part, must comply with the following—

- (a) AS 3959 except for Section 9 Construction for Bushfire Attack Level FZ (BAL-FZ). Buildings subject to BAL-FZ must comply with specific conditions of development consent for construction at this level; or
- (b) the requirements of (a) above as modified by the development consent following consultation with the NSW Rural Fire Service under section 79BA of the Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979; or
- (c) the requirements of (a) above as modified by development consent with a bushfire safety authority issued under section 100B of the Rural Fires Act 1997 for the purposes of integrated development.

SECTION H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

PART H1 THEATRES, STAGES AND PUBLIC HALLS

Delete H1.1 and insert NSW H1.1 as follows:

NSW H1.1 Application of Part

- (a) For a Class 9b building or part of a building that is not an *entertainment venue*—

- (i) The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of Part H1 apply to every enclosed Class 9b building or part of a building which—
 - (A) is a *school* assembly, church or community hall with a *stage* and any *backstage* area with a total *floor area* of more than 300m²; or
 - (B) otherwise, has a *stage* and any *backstage* area with a total *floor area* of more than 200m²; or
 - (C) has a *stage* with an associated rigging loft.
- (ii) Notwithstanding (a)(i)—
 - (A) **H1.4** applies to every open or enclosed Class 9b building; and
 - (B) **H1.7** applies to every enclosed Class 9b building.
- (b) For a Class 9b building that is an *entertainment venue*, **NSW Part H101**, as follows, applies in replacement of Part H1:

NSW PART H101 ENTERTAINMENT VENUES OTHER THAN TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND DRIVE-IN THEATRES

Note.

NSW Part H101 contains *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* additional to those contained in **Sections C, D, E, F and G** for buildings containing or used as *entertainment venues* other than temporary structures and drive-in theatres.

NSW H101.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to every *entertainment venue* as described in the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000.

NSW H101.2 Fire separation

If an *entertainment venue* forms part only of a building, then—

- (a) the whole of the *entertainment venue*; or
- (b) the part containing the *stage*, *backstage* area and *auditorium*,

must be separated from the other parts of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.3 Foyer space

Where an *entertainment venue* is used principally for the purpose of—

- (a) exhibiting *films*; or
- (b) conducting live *stage* productions,

foyer space (excluding stairways and concession areas) must be provided on the basis of at least 0.25 m² for each person that the *auditorium* accommodates.

NSW H101.4 Sprinkler systems for common foyers

In an *entertainment venue*, where multiple *auditoriums* have a foyer in common, the following applies—

- (a) If the foyer serves not more than 2 *auditoriums*; that foyer must be separated from any adjoining foyer by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.
- (b) If the foyer serves more than 2 *auditoriums*, a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5** must be installed—
 - (i) throughout the *storey* containing the foyer; and
 - (ii) throughout each *storey* in the building below that *storey*.

NSW H101.5 Conventional stages

This clause applies to a conventional *stage*, that is, a *stage* which is separated from the *auditorium* by a proscenium wall incorporating a proscenium opening.

NSW H101.5.1 Extent of stage area

If a room or area is not separated from the remainder of a conventional *stage* by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60, the room or area is, for the purposes of this Part, to be taken to form part of the *stage*.

NSW H101.5.2 Small stages

A *stage* which is more than 50 m² but not more than 150 m² in area must have 2 or more means of egress from the *stage* and *backstage* area provided otherwise than through the proscenium wall.

NSW H101.5.3 Large stages

A *stage* which is more than 150 m² in area—

- (a) must have installed directly above the *stage* a suitable sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5**; and
- (b) must have the proscenium opening protected by a safety curtain that complies with **NSW H101.10**; and
- (c) must have a line of open drenchers or open sprinklers provided above the proscenium opening on the *stage* side and in such a position as to be able to discharge over the inside face of the safety curtain; and
- (d) must have 2 or more means of egress from the *stage* and *backstage* area provided otherwise than through the proscenium wall.

NSW H101.5.4 Fire separation of stages

A *stage* which is more than 50 m² in area, and all areas below such a *stage*, must (with the exception of the proscenium opening) be separated from the *backstage* and the remainder of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.6 Non-conventional stages

This clause applies to a *stage* that is not a conventional *stage* within the meaning of **NSW H101.5**.

NSW H101.6.1 Small stages

A *stage* which is more than 50 m² but not more than 150 m² in area must have at least 2 means of egress from the *backstage* area.

NSW H101.6.2 Large stages

A *stage* which is more than 150 m² in area must have at least 2 means of egress from the *backstage* area.

NSW H101.7 Flying scenery

Where there is a *grid* or other means of *flying scenery* over—

- (a) a conventional *stage* or non-conventional *stage*—
 - (i) the *stage* must be provided with a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5**; and
 - (ii) a fly gallery, bridge *grid*, rigging loft, tie gallery or electric light perch must—
 - (A) comply with AS 1657; and
 - (B) be of *non-combustible* construction;
 - (iii) a fly gallery must be provided with at least 2 means of egress, one on each side of the *stage*;
 - (iv) a *grid* or rigging loft must be provided with at least 2 means of egress;
 - (v) if exposed steel is used in the construction of a roof, fly or tie gallery, the roof, fly or tie gallery must be so designed that, in the event of its structural failure due to fire, the wall structure of the building will not be affected;
 - (vi) structural steel supporting the *stage* tower must be enclosed by masonry or concrete and have an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
- (b) in the case of a conventional *stage*, the following additional requirements apply:
 - (i) The proscenium wall must—
 - (A) have an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
 - (B) have the proscenium opening protected by a rigid safety curtain in accordance with **NSW H101.10.1**;
 - (ii) the walls forming the *stage* area, and the area beneath the *stage*, must be constructed of masonry or concrete and have an FRL of not less than 120/120/120.

NSW H101.8 Load notice

A notice indicating the actual distributed and concentrated load for which the *stage* floor has been designed must be conspicuously and permanently displayed in a position adjacent to the *stage* floor.

This notice must be in legible letters and figures—

- (a) at least 50 mm high; and
- (b) on a contrasting background.

NSW H101.9 * * * * *

This clause has been deliberately left blank.

NSW H101.10 Safety curtains

A safety curtain *required* by **NSW H101.5.3** must—

- (a) be made of *non-combustible* material; and
- (b) be so fitted that, when it is closed, it forms an efficient smoke seal between the *stage* and the *auditorium*; and
- (c) be capable of withstanding a pressure differential of 0.5 kPa over its entire surface area; and
- (d) be run on steel guides located on each side of the proscenium opening; and
- (e) remain engaged in its guides if the guides, together with their fittings and attachments and that part of the curtain engaged in the guides, are subjected to a pressure differential of 1 kPa; and
- (f) be of sufficiently robust construction to withstand damage by scenery, *stage* properties and falling debris; and
- (g) be capable of closing the proscenium opening within 30 seconds, either by gravity slide or by motor assisted mechanisms; and
- (h) have manual controls, located on each side of the *stage*, for the closing of the curtains; and
- (i) have a notice displayed adjacent to the operating controls, in clear and legible letters and symbols of adequate size, indicating its use and operation; and
- (j) when operated, actuate a distinctive warning alarm audible to persons on the *stage* and must not be reliant for its operation solely on the primary electricity supply; and
- (k) have the words "Safety Curtain" exhibited on the curtain in clear and legible letters of adequate size to enable them to be read from all parts of the *auditorium*.

NSW H101.10.1 Safety curtains—Additional requirements

A rigid safety curtain *required* by **NSW H101.7** must comply with the requirements of **NSW H101.10** and it must—

- (a) be vertically hung from steel cables;

- (b) be framed with structural steel that complies with AS 4100;
- (c) be sheeted and finished on both faces with sheet steel or other *non-combustible* material of such gauge, and so fastened to its frame, as to ensure that its frame is capable of withstanding distortion arising from heat; and
- (d) when closed, overlap the proscenium opening by not less than 300 mm at each side and by not less than 600 mm at the top.

NSW H101.11 Seating in rows

This clause does not apply to *continental seating* or seating at tables.

NSW H101.11.1 Number of seats

Subject to **NSW H101.11.5**, where seating is arranged in *rows*, the maximum of seats in each row must not exceed—

- (a) 8 where there is an *aisle* at one end only of the *row*; or
- (b) 16 where there are *aisles* on both ends of the *row*.

NSW H101.11.2 Chairs used for seating

Chairs used for seating must—

- (a) where they have arms, be at least 500 mm from centre to centre; and
- (b) where they do not have arms, be at least 450 mm from centre to centre; and
- (c) have a *minimum lateral clearance* of at least 300 mm between—
 - (i) the front of each chair and the back of the chair in front; or
 - (ii) if a guardrail is provided in front of the chairs, between the front of each chair and the guardrail; and
- (d) have a distance of at least 950 mm between the back of each chair and the back of the chair in front.

NSW H101.11.3 Chairs in auditoriums—Level floors

Chairs in an *auditorium* that has a level floor must be—

- (a) securely fastened to the floor; or
- (b) secured together in groups of not less than 4 and not more than 16.

NSW H101.11.4 Chairs in auditoriums—Sloping floors

Chairs in an *auditorium* having a sloping floor, or having stepped or inclined platforms, must be securely fastened to the floor or platform.

NSW H101.11.5 Radiating aisles in seating areas

Where seating is securely fastened to the floor and arranged in *rows* of concentric circles, semi-circles or segments of circles, with *radiating aisles*—

- (a) the number of seats in each row between 2 *aisles* must not exceed 24; and

- (b) each seat must—
 - (i) have a *minimum lateral clearance* of at least 325 mm between the front of the seat and the back of the seat in front; and
 - (ii) have a distance of at least 975 mm between the back of the seat and the back of the seat in front; and
- (c) the *rows* may be curved or straight.

NSW H101.11.6 Aisles and cross-overs

Where *aisles* and *cross-overs* are provided—

- (a) each *aisle* must have a width of at least 1000 mm and each *cross-over* must have a width of at least 1500 mm; and
- (b) the floor of each *aisle* must not have a grade of more than 1 in 8 at any part; and
- (c) if there is a step from a *row* to an *aisle* or from a landing to an *aisle*, the step must not project into the *aisle*.

NSW H101.11.7 Platforms and steps

Where an *aisle* contains platforms or steps—

- (a) the platforms and steps must extend for the full width of the *aisle*; and
- (b) if there are no intervening steps between levels of platforms, the height of the platform riser must not be more than 200 mm; and
- (c) if there are one or more intervening steps between levels of platforms—
 - (i) each riser must be at least 100 mm but not more than 200 mm high; and
 - (ii) each going must be at least 250 mm deep; and
 - (iii) risers and goings must be uniform; and
- (d) goings which are more than 450 mm deep at platform level must not have a grade of more than 1 in 50; and
- (e) at the entrance from the *aisle* to each *row* there must be a clear level floor space, extending the full width of the *aisle*, of at least 300 mm, measured from the back of the *row* in front; and
- (f) any going projecting in front of a seat adjacent to an *aisle* must be protected by a guardrail.

NSW H101.11.8 Stepped platforms

Where stepped platforms without chairs or stepped platforms with bench seats, are used for seating—

- (a) each platform must be at least 700 mm deep; and
- (b) each seating space must be at least 450 mm wide, measured along the front of the platform or bench seat; and
- (c) each seating space must be numbered consecutively; and

- (d) at the entrance from the *aisle* to each *row* there must be a clear level floor space, extending the full width of the *aisle*, of at least 300 mm, measured from the back of the *row* in front; and
- (e) any going projecting in front of a seat adjacent to an *aisle* must be protected by a guardrail; and
- (f) in the case of stepped platforms with bench seats, there must be at least 300 mm between the back of each seat and the front of the platform behind, or the front of the bench seat behind, whichever is the closer.

NSW H101.12 Continental seating

This Clause applies to *continental seating*.

NSW H101.12.1 Seating to be fastened

Seating must be securely fastened to the floor.

NSW H101.12.2 Maximum seats per row

The number of seats in a *row* must not exceed 120.

NSW H101.12.3 Depths of seating rows

The depth of each *row* of seating (that is, the distance between the back of the *row* in front or, if there is a guardrail in front, between the back of the *row* and the guardrail) must, in respect of a *row* containing a number of seats specified in Column 1 of **Table H101.12** be not less than the distance specified in Column 2 of that Table in respect of that number of seats.

NSW H101.12.4 Clearance between rows

The *minimum lateral clearance* between each *row* of seating must, in respect of a *row* containing a number of seats specified in Column 1 of **Table H101.12** be not less than the clearance specified in Column 3 of that Table in respect of that number of seats.

NSW H101.12.5 Chairs used for seating

Chairs used for seating must comply with **NSW H101.11.2(a)** and **(b)**.

NSW H101.12.6 Egress Doorways

Egress doorways through the walls of the *auditorium*—

- (a) must have an aggregate width of at least twice the sum of the clearances specified in Column 3 of **Table H101.12** for each *row* of the *auditorium* to be served by those doorways; and
- (b) must be provided at each end of every fifth *row*, excluding the first 2 *rows* and the last 2 *rows* in the *auditorium* if those *rows* each contain no more than 16 seats; and
- (c) must lead—
 - (i) directly to a road or *open space*; or

- (ii) into a foyer or other area giving access to a road or *open space*; and
- (d) must be provided with *exit* signs if the egress doorways are not sufficiently conspicuous.

NSW H101.12.7 Clear Areas

A clear area—

- (a) must be provided from each end of each *row* to an egress doorway in the wall of the *auditorium*; and
- (b) must have a width of at least—
 - (i) the sum of the clearances specified in Column 3 of **Table H101.12** for each such *row*; or
 - (ii) 500 mm, whichever is the greater; and
- (c) if it contains platforms or steps, must comply with **NSW H101.11.7(a), (b), (c), (d) and (f)**.

NSW H101.12.8 Minimum clear space

At the entrance from a *row* to a clear area, there must be a clear level floor space having a width of at least the clearance specified for the *row* in Column 3 of **Table H101.12**.

NSW H101.12.9 Doors

A door fitted to the egress doorway in the wall of an *auditorium* must comply with **NSW D2.15** and **NSW D2.19**.

Table H101.12 SPACING OF AUDITORIUM SEATING

Column 1 Number of seats in Rows	Column 2 Depth of Rows (mm)	Column 3 Clearance between Rows (mm)
Not exceeding 16	950	300
17 - 30	975	325
31 - 45	1000	350
46 - 60	1025	375
61 - 75	1050	400
76 - 90	1075	425
91 - 105	1100	450
106 - 120	1125	475

NSW H101.13 Provision of guardrails

NSW H101.13.1 Location

Guardrails must be provided—

- (a) along the fascia of each balcony or box;
- (b) if there is a stepped floor, along the front edge of each *cross-over*; and
- (c) where **NSW H101.13.2** and **NSW H101.13.3** apply.

NSW H101.13.2 Fixed back seats

If seats with fixed backs are provided, guardrails that extend for the full width of the seating, must be provided at least 500 mm above the platform unless—

- (a) fixed seat backs of the next lower level project at least 500 mm above the level of the stepped platform; and
- (b) there is only one riser between the platform and the next lower *cross-over*.

NSW H101.13.3 Steps between platforms

If—

- (a) there is more than one intervening step in an *aisle* between levels of platforms, a guardrail must be provided (at a vertical height of at least 660 mm measured above the nosing of each tread and of the upper platform) to the sides of the *aisle* adjacent to those steps; and
- (b) there is more than one intervening step in an *aisle* between levels of platforms, and that *aisle* is along a wall, a continuous guardrail must be affixed to that wall at a height of at least 865 mm above the nosing of each tread; and
- (c) the end of a platform or the back of the highest platform does not abut a wall that extends at least 660 mm above the floor level of the platform, a guard rail not less than 660 mm high must be provided—
 - (i) at the ends of the platform, extending from the front of the first riser to the back of the highest platform; and
 - (ii) at the back of the highest platform, extending the full width of the platform; and
- (d) there is an inclined floor, the raised section of which is not bounded by walls at least 660 mm high, a guard rail must be provided that extends around the perimeter of the raised section at a height of at least 660 mm above the inclined floor level; and
- (e) seating at tables is provided on a stepped platform, a guardrail at least 500 mm high must be provided along the front edge of the platform.

NSW H101.14 Guardrails

This clause applies to seating areas.

NSW H101.14.1 Continental seating

Where a guardrail is provided in front of a row of chairs—

- (a) the distance between the back of each chair in that row, and the guardrail must be not less than the distance specified in Column 2 of **Table H101.12** for the number of chairs in that row;

- (b) the *minimum lateral clearance* between the front of each chair in that row and the guardrail must be not less than the clearance specified in Column 3 of **Table H101.12** for the number of chairs in that row.

NSW H101.14.2 Balconies and boxes

A guardrail provided along the fascia of a balcony or box—

- (a) if it is located at the foot of a stepped *aisle*, must have its top surface at least 900 mm above the floor of the balcony or box; and
- (b) if it is not located at the foot of a stepped *aisle*, must have its top surface at least 750 mm above the floor; and
- (c) if it has a ledge more than 70 mm wide, must have the top surface of the ledge sloping downwards towards the floor of the balcony or box at an angle of at least 30 degrees from the horizontal; and
- (d) must have an unperforated kerb or toe guard extending for at least 300 mm above the floor.

NSW H101.14.3 Cross-overs

A guardrail provided along the front edge of a cross-over on a stepped floor—

- (a) must be at least 750 mm high; and
- (b) must extend for the full distance between *aisles*, or between a wall and an *aisle*, or for such other distance as considered necessary.

NSW H101.15 Dressing rooms

A dressing room or 2 or more adjoining dressing rooms, having a total *floor area* of more than 50 m², must—

- (a) be separated from other parts of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60;
- (b) have at least 2 means of egress as remote from each other as possible, one of which must discharge—
 - (i) directly to a road or *open space*; or
 - (ii) through a fire-isolated *exit* to a road or *open space*.

NSW H101.16 Storerooms

A storeroom must be separated from other parts of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.17 Projection suites

- (a) This clause applies to *projection suites*.
- (b) A *projection suite* must be provided in an *entertainment venue* intended to be used for the showing of *films*.

NSW H101.17.1 Rooms to be provided

A *projection suite* in accordance with the staffing requirements of Schedule 3A of the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000 must contain either—

- (a) a projection room and sanitary accommodation comprising at least 1 closet pan and 1 washbasin, where the *projection suite* is continually staffed; or
- (b) a projection room fitted with the following equipment—
 - (i) an *automatic* fire suppression system in accordance with SSL Appraisal Specification FAS 102 or a sprinkler system complying with AS 2118; and
 - (ii) a smoke detection system which will—
 - (A) comply with AS 1670.1 except for the provisions of Clause 3.26(f) - location where detectors not *required*; and
 - (B) be connected to a fire station or other approved monitoring service where arrangements are in place to initiate *fire brigade* response; and
 - (C) close down all shutters fitted to projection or observation ports; and
 - (D) activate sufficient general lighting to provide a minimum of 40 lux measured at floor level in any *auditorium* affected; and
 - (E) operate a public address system to automatically announce a suitable message from the management of the premises; and
 - (F) activate an audible alarm to immediately indicate to management the presence of smoke in the projection room.

NSW H101.17.2 Fire separation

A *projection suite* must be separated from all other internal parts of the building in which it is located by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.17.3 Concession for protection of some openings

If a projection or observation port is not more than 0.1 m² in area—

- (a) a metal shutter not less than 1.5 mm thick may be fitted thereto instead of the protection *required* under **NSW C3.11**; and
- (b) any metal shutter or protection system provided must be equipped with a device to permit the closing of the shutter or protection system from easily accessible operating positions adjacent to each egress doorway from the projection room.

NSW H101.18 Basement storeys

Where an *entertainment venue* includes not more than 2 basement storeys—

- (a) all *required exits* from the basement must be enclosed in *non-combustible* construction, with the exception of the main entry or *exit*; and
- (b) any *auditorium* and other public areas in the basement must be equipped with an air-handling system that complies with AS 1668.2.

NSW H101.18.1 Basement storeys — More than two

If the *entertainment venue* includes more than 2 basement *storeys*—

- (a) the construction must be of at least Type B; and
- (b) all *required exits* from the basement must be enclosed in a *fire-resisting shaft* having an FRL as *required* by the relevant Type of construction; and
- (c) the building must be equipped with a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5**.

NSW H101.19 Electric mains installation

NSW H101.19.1 Main switchboard

The switchboard containing the main isolation switch must—

- (a) be located in a position that is readily accessible to authorised persons, and to the *Fire Brigade* in the case of an emergency; and
- (b) be enclosed by construction having an FRL not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.19.2 Circuit protection

Protection of a final sub-circuit originating at a switchboard or distribution board must be by means of circuit breakers.

NSW H101.19.3 Separate sub-mains

Where an *entertainment venue* has its mains supply in common with that of another building or where it is a part of a building—

- (a) the *entertainment venue* must be served by a separate and independent sub-main from the main switchboard; and
- (b) each such sub-main, the consumer's main and the supply authority's conductors within the building must be protected against fire by means of—
 - (i) mineral-insulated metal-sheathed cables or other cables that provide at least 2 hours' fire protection; or
 - (ii) heavy-duty PVC conduit or metallic pipe, concrete encased in walls or slabs with a minimum of 50 mm cover; or
 - (iii) heavy-duty PVC conduit or metallic pipe, buried at least 500 mm below ground level, for underground cabling.

NSW H101.20 Lighting

NSW H101.20.1 Lighting switches

- (a) Any switch controlling the lighting system must not be accessible.
- (b) Where, during normal use, general lighting may be dimmed or switched off, an override switch to switch on all the general lighting instantaneously must be installed in the *auditorium* in a position accessible to management.

NSW H101.20.2 Lighting levels

Where the lamps utilised in the general lighting are of a type that will not relight immediately after the restoration of the primary electricity supply to those lamps—

- (a) a time delay or other suitable means must be provided to maintain the emergency lighting for a period not less than that necessary to allow the general lighting lamps to restrike; or
- (b) lamps of a type that will provide immediate lighting must be installed and—
 - (i) arranged in such a manner as to ensure visual conditions not inferior to those *required* to be provided by the emergency lighting; and
 - (ii) capable of being switched in common with the general lighting and of being controlled also by the override switch *required* by **NSW H101.20.1(b)**.

NSW H101.20.3 Provision of aisle lighting

Where general lighting is to be either dimmed or extinguished when the public is in attendance and where the floor is stepped or at an inclination greater than 1 in 12, *aisle* lights must be provided to illuminate the length of each *aisle* and the tread of each step therein.

NSW H101.20.4 Aisle lighting power supply

Where an *aisle* light is installed in a seat frame, it must be supplied at a voltage of not more than 32 volts AC or 115 volts DC.

NSW H101.20.5 Aisle lighting alternative power supply

Aisle lighting must be provided with an alternative electricity supply that—

- (a) is capable of being *automatically* energised in the event of failure of the primary lighting electricity supply; and
- (b) complies with the provisions applying to emergency lighting.

NSW H101.21 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

NSW H101.22 Automatic smoke-and-heat vents for stages

An automatic *smoke-and-heat vent* system *required* by **NSW Table E2.2b "Stages and backstage"** must—

- (a) be capable of *automatic* operation by the inclusion of a heat sensing device designed to activate the system at a temperature of not more than 71°C; and
- (b) be capable of being released manually from positions at each side of the *stage* and of being fully activated from either position; and
- (c) have a notice, prominently displayed at each position referred to in (b), clearly indicating the method of activation; and

- (d) have an openable area of not less than 1/10 of the total area of the *stage*.

NSW H101.23 Solid fuel burning stoves and open fire places.

Solid fuel burning stoves and open fire places must not be installed in premises designed for the purpose of—

- (a) exhibiting *films*; or
- (b) conducting live theatre productions.

NSW H101.24 Fuel gas cylinders

NSW H101.24.1 General

Fuel gas cylinders must—

- (a) be housed in an enclosure that is located outside the building; and
- (b) comply with the ventilation requirements of Clause 6.4.6 and 6.4.7 of AS/NZS 1596.

NSW H101.24.2 Fuel gas cylinder enclosures

An enclosure referred to in **NSW H101.24.1**—

- (a) must be located not less than 3 m from any *window*, door, vent or other opening; and
- (b) if located 3 m or more from a building must—
 - (i) have a concrete base; and
 - (ii) be constructed from heavy-gauge chain-wire mesh or other suitable material; and
 - (iii) be at least 1.8 m high; and
 - (iv) be so designed as to securely contain the fuel gas cylinders in a single line; and
 - (v) must be so designed as to allow cross ventilation; and
- (c) if located less than 3 m from a building must—
 - (i) have a concrete base; and
 - (ii) have 3 sides constructed from concrete or masonry; and
 - (iii) have a concrete roof; and
 - (iv) be so designed as to securely contain the fuel gas cylinders in a single line; and
 - (v) have a hinged, heavy-gauge chain-wire door capable of being secured against unauthorised entry; and
 - (vi) have its roof at least 600 mm above the uppermost fitting on any fuel gas cylinder housed therein.

NSW PART H102 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

NSW H102.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to *temporary structures* used as *entertainment venues*.

NSW H102.2 Exits—Exclusions

In this clause, a reference to an entrance or *exit* does not include a reference to an entrance or *exit* provided for persons or animals performing in a *temporary structure*.

NSW H102.3 Location of exits

Exits must be so provided and arranged as to afford a ready means of egress from all parts of a *temporary structure*.

NSW H102.4 Exits to be provided

Without limiting the generality of **NSW H102.3**—

- (a) the number of *exits* to be provided for a *temporary structure* designed to accommodate a number of persons specified in Column 1 of **Table H102.4** must be not less than the number of *exits* specified in Column 2 of that Table in respect of that number of persons; and
- (b) the aggregate width of the *exits* to a *temporary structure* designed to accommodate a number of persons specified in Column 1 of **Table H102.4** must not be less than the width specified in Column 3 of that Table in respect of that number of persons.

NSW H102.5 Vertical clearances for exits

Every part of an entrance or *exit* must provide a minimum unobstructed height of 2000 mm and, where the entrance or *exit* is beneath a stepped seating platform, infilled risers or other approved overhead protection must be provided above the entrance or *exit*.

NSW H102.6 Curtains across exits

A flap or curtain used to cover an *exit* must be so designed that, when it is secured, it will not obstruct or impede egress.

NSW H102.7 Curtains and blinds

Curtains and blinds for use in a *temporary structure* must comply with **Clause 4 of NSW Specification C1.10**.

Table H102.4 NUMBER OF EXITS AND WIDTHS

Column 1 Accommodation provided	Column 2 Number of <i>exits</i> required	Column 3 Aggregate width of <i>exits</i>
1-25 persons	*1-2	1 000

Table H102.4 NUMBER OF EXITS AND WIDTHS (Continued)

Column 1 Accommodation provided	Column 2 Number of <i>exits required</i>	Column 3 Aggregate width of <i>exits</i>
26-50 persons	2	1 500
51-75 persons	2	2 000
76-100 persons	2	2 500
100-200 persons	2	3 000
201-400 persons	3	4 500
401-600 persons	4	6 000
601-800 persons	5	7 500
801-1000 persons	5	9 000
over 1000 persons	5 plus one additional <i>exit</i> for each additional 450 persons or part thereof	9 000 plus 500 mm for each additional 50 persons or part thereof.
*Note:	(a)	Where only one <i>exit</i> is provided that <i>exit</i> must be at least 1000 mm wide.
	(b)	Where 2 <i>exits</i> are provided each must be at least 500 mm wide.

NSW H102.8 Fabrics

Fabric that is used in the construction of a *temporary structure* must have—

- (a) a *Flammability Index* of not more than 6 where used—
 - (i) within a height of 4 m of the base of the *temporary structure*; or
 - (ii) in an air-supported *temporary structure* without other supporting framework; and
- (b) a *Flammability Index* of not more than 25 in every other case.

NSW H102.9 Guardrails

A rigid guardrail must—

- (a) be provided at each end of a stepped or inclined platform, at least 750 mm high above the floor of the platform, and must extend—
 - (i) in the case of a stepped platform, from the front of the first riser; and
 - (ii) in the case of an inclined platform, from the front of the first row of seating, to the back of the highest platform and along the rear of that platform for its full width; and
- (b) not obstruct any *aisle*, *cross-over* or *exit*.

NSW H102.10 Seating

Seating must be provided in accordance with **NSW H101.11.1**, **NSW H101.11.2**, **NSW H101.11.3(b)**, **NSW H101.11.5(a)**, (c), **NSW H101.11.6(a)** and **NSW H101.11.8(a)**, (b), (c) and (d).

NSW H102.11 Sanitary accommodation

Suitable sanitary accommodation must be provided at a location convenient to the *temporary structure*.

NSW H102.12 Projection suites

Any *projection suite* must comply with **NSW H101.17.2** and **NSW H101.17.3**.

NSW H102.13 Fireplaces and heating

No fireplace or other form of heating equipment may be installed in a *temporary structure*, without the consent of the approval authority.

NSW H102.14 Electrical services

Electrical services connected to the local supply authority's mains, to a generating plant or to a battery supply must comply with—

- (a) the requirements of the local supply authority; and
- (b) AS 3002; and
- (c) where applicable, AS/NZS 3000; and
- (d) **NSW H101.19.1(a)** and **NSW H101.19.3(a)**.

NSW H102.15 Artificial lighting

Artificial lighting must be provided, and must comply with **NSW H101.20.1** and **NSW H101.20.2**.

NSW H102.15.1 Emergency lighting levels

Emergency lighting must be provided to the areas provided with artificial lighting under **NSW H102.15** and must include a sufficient number of lamps to give a minimum illumination of 0.2 lux at floor level.

NSW H102.15.2 Emergency lighting power supply

Where emergency lighting is provided, the capacity of the battery and charging system must be sufficient to provide the illumination *required* by **NSW H102.15.1** for—

- (a) half an hour, in respect of a *temporary structure* designed to accommodate not more than 1000 persons; and
- (b) 1 hour, in respect of a *temporary structure* designed to accommodate more than 1000 persons.

NSW H102.16 Exit signs

Exit signs must be provided above all *exits* and in such other locations as may be required by **NSW E4.6** and must comply with **E4.5** and **E4.8**.

NSW H102.17 Fire-fighting services

- (a) Fire-fighting services and appliances must be so provided as to afford adequate protection and must be so located as the approving authority, on the advice of the Director-General of New South Wales Fire Brigades, may require.
- (b) Where *required* by the approving authority, the fire-fighting services and appliances must comply with **Part E1**.

NSW PART H103 DRIVE-IN THEATRES

NSW H103.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to drive-in theatres.

NSW H103.2 Speaker standards

Speaker standards must—

- (a) be placed at a minimum of 5.5 m centres in a line along each parking ramp; and
- (b) be capable of being illuminated throughout any performance so as to be easily distinguishable at all times.

NSW H103.2.1 Lines of speaker standards

Lines of speaker standards along parking ramps must be placed at a distance of not less than 12.2 m apart.

NSW H103.3 Electrical services

The following electrical services must be installed underground—

- (a) the supply authority's conductors within the site and the consumer's mains, unless otherwise approved; and
- (b) electrical wiring external to any building on the site; and
- (c) all wiring to the speaker standards.

NSW H103.4 Vehicular entrances

Each public vehicular entrance to or exit from the drive-in theatre must be capable of being fully illuminated by flood lights that are so placed and so focussed as not to interfere with the vision of the driver of any motor vehicle.

NSW H103.5 Lighting

- (a) Driveways — Entrance and exit driveways, and the perimeter of the holding area, must be capable of being continuously illuminated by lamps capable of producing a minimum illumination of 0.5 lux at ground level.
- (b) Ramp areas — The whole of the ramp area of a drive-in theatre must be capable of being floodlit by means of area flood lights to an illumination of at least 10 lux.

SECTION I MAINTENANCE

PART I1 EQUIPMENT AND SAFETY INSTALLATIONS

Delete I1.1 and insert NSW I1.1 as follows:

NSW I1.1 Essential fire safety measures

Essential fire or other safety measures must be maintained and certified on an ongoing basis, in accordance with the provisions of the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation, 2000.

Delete I1.2:

NSW I1.2 Mechanical ventilation and hot water, warm water and cooling water systems

(deleted).

Note.

This clause is deleted from the BCA in NSW, as the maintenance of mechanical ventilation and hot water, warm water and cooling water systems, for the purposes of public health, is regulated in the Public Health (Microbial Control) Regulation, 2000, as amended by the Public Health (Microbial Control) Amendment (Miscellaneous) Regulation, 2003, under the Public Health Act, 1991.

PART I2 ENERGY EFFICIENCY INSTALLATIONS

Delete BCA PART I2 and insert the following:

NSW PART I2 Energy Efficiency Installations

(deleted)

NSW SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Replace Section J with NSW Section J as follows:

Note 1.

NSW Section J consists of two Subsections J(A) and J(B).

NSW Subsection J(A) Energy Efficiency - Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts

This Subsection contains energy efficiency requirements for Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings.

The need for separating these requirements from the requirements for Class 3 buildings arises because, in NSW, Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings are subject to BASIX (the Building Sustainability Index), however Class 3 buildings are not.

BASIX is the web-based planning tool designed to assess the potential performance of certain residential buildings against a range of sustainability indices including thermal comfort and energy. Commitments made under BASIX become a condition of the relevant development consent or complying development certificate.

BASIX applies in NSW to all new Class 1 and 2 buildings, and Class 4 parts of buildings, and to alterations and additions to buildings of those classes where the work is subject to BASIX and also where an applicant elects to comply with BASIX.

The provisions of NSW Subsection J(A) are therefore designed to complement requirements that arise under BASIX and which are implemented via the development consent. Where BASIX is not applied to alterations and additions to Class 1 and 2 buildings, and Class 4 parts of buildings, these provisions will also complement council development controls that require energy efficiency measures to be incorporated as part of the alterations and additions.

NSW Subsection J(B) Energy Efficiency - Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings

This subsection contains energy efficiency requirements for Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings.

As Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings are not subject to BASIX, NSW Subsection J(B) applies the provisions of the national Section J relevant to Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings, with minor variations.

Note 2.

All definitions in Part A1 that are applicable to the national Section J are also applicable to NSW Section J.

NSW SUBSECTION J(A) ENERGY EFFICIENCY - CLASS 2 BUILDINGS AND CLASS 4 PARTS

OBJECTIVE

NSW J(A)O1

The *Objective* of this Section is to reduce greenhouse gas emissions.

Application:

NSW J(A)O1 only applies to a Class 2 building and Class 4 part of a building.

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT

NSW J(A)F1

To reduce greenhouse gas emissions, to the degree necessary, a building, including its *services*, is to be capable of efficiently using energy.

Application:

NSW J(A)F1 only applies to a Class 2 building and Class 4 part of a building.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT

NSW J(A)P1

- (a) Thermal insulation in a building must be installed in a manner and have characteristics, which facilitate the efficient use of energy for artificial heating and cooling.
- (b) A building must have, to the degree necessary, thermal breaks installed between the framing and external cladding, to facilitate efficient thermal performance of the building envelope.

Application:

- (a) NSW J(A)P1(a) only applies to thermal insulation in a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building where a development consent specifies that the insulation is to be provided as part of the development.

- (b) In (a), the term development consent has the meaning given by the Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979.
- (c) NSW J(A)P1(b) only applies to a metal framed roof and a metal framed wall.

NSW J(A)P2

A building must have, to the degree necessary, a level of building sealing against air leakage to facilitate the efficient use of energy for artificial heating and cooling appropriate to—

- (a) the function and use of the building; and
- (b) the internal environment; and
- (c) the geographic location of the building.

Application:

NSW J(A)P2 only applies to a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building, except—

- (a) a building in *climate zones* 2 and 5 where the only means of *air-conditioning* is by using an evaporative cooler; and
- (b) a building *ventilation opening* that is necessary for the safe operation of a gas appliance; and
- (c) parts that cannot be fully enclosed

NSW J(A)P3

A building's *services* must have features that, to the degree necessary, facilitate the efficient use of energy appropriate to—

- (a) the function and use of the *service*; and
- (b) the internal environment; and
- (c) the geographic location of the building; and
- (d) the energy source of the *service*.

Application:

NSW J(A)P3 only applies to a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building.

NSW J(A)P4

A building, including its *services*, must have, to the degree necessary, features that facilitate the maintenance of systems and components appropriate to the function and use of the building.

Application:

NSW J(A)P4 only applies to a Class 2 building, except for a *sole-occupancy unit* in that building.

NSW PART J(A)1 BUILDING FABRIC

NSW J(A)1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (a) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed to comply with the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*, Performance Requirement **NSW J(A)P1** is satisfied by complying with **NSW J(A)1.1** and **NSW J(A)1.2**.
- (b) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed as an *Alternative Solution* to the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of **NSW J(A)1.1** and **NSW J(A)1.2**, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with **A0.10**.

NSW J(A)1.1 Application of Part

- (a) The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* only apply to thermal insulation in a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building where a development consent or complying development certificate specifies that the insulation is to be provided as part of the development.
- (b) In (a), development consent and complying development certificate, have the meaning given to these terms by the Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979.
- (c) The *Deemed-to-Satisfy* provisions of this Part for thermal breaks apply to all Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts.

NSW J(A)1.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings must comply with the national BCA provisions of **J0.2(b)** to **(e)** – except that the reference to “Where *required*” in **J1.2** is deemed to refer to “Where a development consent specifies that insulation is to be provided as part of the development.”

Note: Compliance is not *required* with the national BCA provisions of **J0.2(a)** as those matters are regulated under BASIX and national BCA provisions of **J0.2(f)** are covered by **NSW J(A)2.2**.

NSW PART J(A)2 BUILDING SEALING

NSW J(A)2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (a) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed to comply with the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*, Performance Requirement **NSW J(A)P2** is satisfied by complying with **NSW J(A)2.1** and **NSW J(A)2.2**.
- (b) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed as an *Alternative Solution* to the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of **NSW J(A)2.1** and **NSW J(A)2.2**, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with **A0.10**.

NSW J(A)2.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building, but exclude—

- (a) a building in *climate zones* 2 and 5 where the only means of *air-conditioning* is by using an evaporative cooler; and
- (b) a building *ventilation opening* that is necessary for the safe operation of a gas appliance; and
- (c) parts of buildings that cannot be fully enclosed.

NSW J(A)2.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings must comply with the following national BCA provisions—

- (a) **J3.2** Chimneys and flues; and
- (b) **J3.3** Roof lights; and
- (c) **J3.4** External doors and *windows*; and
- (d) **J3.5** Exhaust fans; and
- (e) **J3.6** Construction of roofs, walls and floors; and
- (f) **J3.7** Evaporative coolers.

NSW PART J(A)3 AIR-CONDITIONING AND VENTILATING SYSTEMS

NSW J(A)3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (a) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed to comply with the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*, *Performance Requirement NSW J(A)P3* is satisfied by complying with **NSW J(A)3.1** and **NSW J(A)3.2**.
- (b) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed as an *Alternative Solution* to the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of **NSW J(A)3.1** and **NSW J(A)3.2**, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with **A0.10**.

NSW J(A)3.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building.

NSW J(A)3.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings must comply with the following national BCA provisions, as applicable—

- (a) **J5.2** Air conditioning and ventilating systems; and
- (b) **J5.3** Time switch; and
- (c) **J5.4(a)** and (c) to (i) Heating and cooling systems; and
- (d) **J5.5** Ancillary exhaust systems.

Note: Compliance is not *required* with the national BCA provisions of **J5.4(b)** as those matters are regulated under BASIX.

NSW PART J(A)4 HOT WATER SUPPLY

NSW J(A)4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (a) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed to comply with the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*, *Performance Requirement NSW J(A)P3* is satisfied by complying with **NSW J(A)4.1** and **NSW J(A)4.2**.
- (b) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed as an *Alternative Solution* to the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of **NSW J(A)4.1** and **NSW J(A)4.2**, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with **A0.10**.

NSW J(A)4.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building.

NSW J(A)4.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings must comply with the national BCA provisions of **J7.2** Hot water supply.

Note: Compliance is not *required* with the national BCA provisions of **J7.3** and **J7.4** as those matters are regulated under BASIX.

NSW PART J(A)5 ACCESS FOR MAINTENANCE AND FACILITIES FOR MONITORING

NSW J(A)5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (a) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed to comply with the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*, *Performance Requirement NSW J(A)P4* is satisfied by complying with **NSW J(A)5.1** to **NSW J(A)5.3**.
- (b) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed as an *Alternative Solution* to the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of **NSW J(A)5.1** to **NSW J(A)5.3**, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with **A0.10**.

NSW J(A)5.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to a Class 2 building except within a *sole-occupancy unit*.

NSW J(A)5.2 Access for maintenance

Access for maintenance must be provided to—

- (a) adjustable or motorised shading devices; and

- (b) time switches and motion detectors; and
- (c) room temperature thermostats; and
- (d) plant thermostats such as on boilers or refrigeration units; and
- (e) motorised air dampers and control valves; and
- (f) reflectors, lenses and diffusers of light fittings; and
- (g) heat transfer equipment; and
- (h) plant that receives a concession under **JV3(b)** for the use of energy obtained from—
 - (i) an on-site *renewable energy* source; or
 - (ii) another process as reclaimed energy.

NSW J(A)5.3 Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings must comply with the national BCA provisions of **J8.3**.

NSW SUBSECTION J(B) ENERGY EFFICIENCY - CLASS 3 AND CLASS 5 TO 9 BUILDINGS

For buildings of Class 3 and Class 5 to 9, the energy efficiency provisions of BCA 2011 as varied by the NSW Appendix, are applicable, as follows—

NSW J(B)1 Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings must comply with all of the provisions of the national **Section J** that are applicable to the relevant classifications, except as varied by **NSW J3.1** Application of Part and **NSW J8.2** Access for maintenance.

Add NSW J3.1(f) as follows:

NSW J3.1 Application of Part

- (f) parts of buildings that cannot be fully enclosed.

Delete J8.2 and substitute NSW J8.2 as follows:

NSW J8.2 Access for maintenance

Access for maintenance must be provided to—

- (a) adjustable or motorised shading devices; and
- (b) time switches and motion detectors; and
- (c) room temperature thermostats; and
- (d) plant thermostats such as on boilers or refrigeration units; and
- (e) motorised air dampers and control valves; and

- (f) reflectors, lenses and diffusers of light fittings; and
- (g) heat transfer equipment; and
- (h) plant that receives a concession under **JV3(b)** for the use of energy obtained from—
 - (i) an on-site *renewable energy* source; or
 - (ii) another process as reclaimed energy.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979, the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000 and this Code, there is a variety of other regulatory provisions, including legislation, regulation and departmental policies that impose requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings in NSW.

The following is a non-definitive list of such provisions. It does not include Commonwealth provisions that may apply in NSW, nor planning and environmental standards that may impose building requirements in individual circumstances. It is meant as an indicative guide only and is not to be relied upon in any way as a substitute for further research, investigation and legal advice needed to determine building standards in individual circumstances.

1. Abattoirs, Knackeries and Meat Premises

1.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Food Regulation 2004

2. Children's Services

2.1 Administering Agency

Department of Community Services

Relevant Legislation

Children's Services Regulation 2004

2.2 Administering Agency

Department of Education and Communities

Relevant Legislation

Children (Education and Care Services National Law Application) Act 2010

3. Crematoria, Vaults, Mortuary Churches etc.

3.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Public Health (Disposal of Bodies) Regulation 2002

4. Crown Land — Construction Approval

4.1 Administering Agency

Department of Lands

Relevant Legislation

Crown Lands Act 1989

Crown Lands Regulation 2006

4.2 Administering Agency

Office of Emergency Services

Relevant Legislation

Rural Fires Act 1997

5. Dairies

5.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Food Regulation 2004

6. Dangerous Goods (including Gas Installations)

6.1 Administering Agency

Department of Water and Energy

Relevant Legislation

Gas Supply Act 1996

Dangerous Goods (Gas Installations) Regulation 1998

6.2 Administering Agency

Workcover Authority

Relevant Legislation

Explosives Regulation 2005

Occupational Health and Safety Regulation 2001

7. Dining Rooms and Bars

7.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Food Regulation 2004

8. Electrical Installations**8.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Water and Energy

Relevant Legislation

Electricity (Consumer Safety) Regulation 2006

Electricity Supply (General) Regulation 2001

8.2 Administering Agency

Workcover Authority

Relevant Legislation

Occupational Health and Safety Regulation 2001

9. Fire Prevention in Existing Buildings**9.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Planning and Infrastructure

Relevant Legislation

Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979

Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000

10. Food Premises**10.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Food Regulations 2004

11. Foundries**11.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Water and Energy

Relevant Legislation

Gas Supply Act 1996

Dangerous Goods (Gas Installations) Regulation 1998

12. Historic Buildings**12.1 Administering Agency**

Heritage Branch

Office of Environment and Heritage

Relevant Legislation

Heritage Regulation 2005

13. Hospitals, Nursing Homes and Health Care Buildings

13.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Day Procedure Centres Regulation 1996

Private Hospitals Regulation 1996

14. Hot Water Systems and Air Handling Systems

14.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Public Health (Microbial Control) Regulation 2000

15. Lift Installations

15.1 Administering Agency

Workcover Authority

Relevant Legislation

Occupational Health and Safety Regulation 2001

16. Moveable Dwellings (in Caravan Parks)

16.1 Administering Agency

Division of Local Government

Relevant Legislation

Local Government Act 1993

16.2 Administering Agency

Division of Local Government

Department of Planning and Infrastructure

Relevant Legislation

Local Government (Manufactured Home Estates, Caravan Parks, Camping Grounds and Moveable Dwellings) Regulation 2005

17. Occupational Health and Safety

17.1 Administering Agency

Workcover Authority

Relevant Legislation

Occupational Health and Safety Regulation 2001

18. Pharmacies

18.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Pharmacy (General) Regulation 1998

19. Planning Controls

19.1 Administering Agency

Department of Planning and Infrastructure

Relevant Legislation

Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979

Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000

20. Premises for Activities Involving Skin Penetration

20.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Public Health (Skin Penetration) Regulation 2000

21. Sanitary Plumbing, Water Supply and Sewerage

21.1 Administering Agency

Division of Local Government

Relevant Legislation

Local Government Act 1993

Local Government (General) Regulation 2005

21.2 Administering Agency

NSW Fair Trading

Relevant Legislation

NSW Code of Practice for Plumbing and Drainage 2006 (NSW Plumbing Code)

22. Septic Tank Installations

22.1 Administering Agency

Division of Local Government

Relevant Legislation

Local Government Act 1993

Local Government (General) Regulation 2005

23. Sleeping Accommodation**23.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Public Health (General) Regulation 2002

24. Smoking Restrictions**24.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Smoke Free Environment Regulation 2007

25. Subdivision of Buildings**25.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Lands

Relevant Legislation

Conveyancing Act 1919

Strata Schemes (Freehold Development) Act 1973

Strata Schemes (Leasehold Development) Act 1986

26. Swimming Pool Fences**26.1 Administering Agency**

Division of Local Government

Relevant Legislation

Swimming Pools Act 1992

Swimming Pools Regulation 2008

27. Temporary Structures**27.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Planning and Infrastructure

Relevant Legislation

Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979

Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000

APPENDIX

NORTHERN TERRITORY

INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia (BCA) provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in the Northern Territory.

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX NORTHERN TERRITORY

Northern Territory

A GENERAL PROVISIONS

NT Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

B STRUCTURE

NT B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

NT addition to Specification B1.2

E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

NT E1.5 Sprinklers

F HEALTH AND AMENITY

NT FO5 Objective

NT FF5.1 Functional Statement

NT FP5.1 - NT FP5.4 Performance Requirements

NT F5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

NT F5.1 Application of Part

NT F5.2 Weighted sound reduction index: Interpretation

NT F5.3 Sound insulation of floors between units

NT F5.4 Sound insulation of walls between units

NT F5.5 Walls between a bathroom, sanitary compartment, laundry or kitchen and a habitable room in adjoining unit

NT F5.6 Soil and waste pipes to be separated

NT F5.7 Isolation of pumps

NT F5.8 Walls between a bedroom and kitchen or laundry in a Class 9c building

NT Specification F5.2 Sound Insulation for Building Elements

NT Specification F5.5 Impact Sound - Test of Equivalence

H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

NT Part H101 * * * * *

NT Part H102 Premises to be used for Activities Involving Skin Penetration

NT H102.1 Application of Part

NT H102.2 * * * * *

NT H102.3 Washbasins

NT Part H103 Mortuaries

- NT H103.1 Application of Part
- NT H103.2 Layout of mortuary
- NT H103.3 Construction of body preparation room
- NT H103.4 Water supply and sewerage

I MAINTENANCE

- NT I1.1 Safety measures
- NT Part I2 Energy Efficiency Installations

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

- NT SECTION J Energy Efficiency

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1 INTERPRETATION

NT Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 the following:

NT Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

No	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
AS/NZS 1170		Structural design actions	
Part 2	2002	Wind actions	NT Spec B1.2
AS 1851		Maintenance of fire protection equipment	NT I1.1
Part 1	1995	Portable fire extinguishers and fire blankets	
Part 2	1995	Fire hose reels	
Part 3	1997	Automatic fire sprinkler systems	
Part 4	1992	Fire hydrant installations	
Part 5	1981	Automatic smoke/heat venting systems	
Part 6	1997	Management procedures for maintaining the fire precaution features of air-handling systems	
Part 7	1984	Fire-resistant doorsets	
Part 8	1987	Automatic fire detection and alarm systems	
Part 10	1989	Emergency warning and intercommunication systems	
AS/NZS 2293		Emergency evacuation lighting for buildings	

NT Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS (Continued)

No	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
Part 2	1995	Inspection and maintenance	NT I1.1
AS 3660		Termite management	
Part 1	2000	New building work	NT B1.4
BCA 2009	May 2009	Building Code of Australia	NT Section J

SECTION B STRUCTURE

PART B1 STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

Delete B1.4(i) and insert NT B1.4(i) as follows:

NT B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

- (i) Termite Risk Management: Where a *primary building element* is subject to attack by subterranean termites—
 - (i) AS 3660.1 with additional protection measures to be used in areas where *Mastotermes Darwiniensis* are prevalent; and
 - (ii) for the purpose of this provision, a *primary building element* consisting entirely of, or a combination of, any of the following materials is considered not to be subject to termite attack:
 - (A) Steel, aluminium or other metals.
 - (B) Concrete.
 - (C) Masonry.
 - (D) Fibre-reinforced cement.
 - (E) Timber in areas where *Mastotermes Darwiniensis* are not prevalent—naturally termite resistant in accordance with Appendix C of AS 3660.1.
 - (F) Timber — preservative treated in accordance with Appendix D of AS 3660.1; and
 - (iii) where a termite risk management system in accordance with AS 3660.1 is used, a durable notice must be permanently fixed to the building in a prominent location, such as a meter box or the like, indicating—
 - (A) the method of termite risk management; and
 - (B) the date of installation of the system; and
 - (C) where a chemical barrier is used, its life expectancy as listed on the National Registration Authority label; and

- (D) the installer's or manufacturer's recommendations for the scope and frequency of future inspections for termite activity.

NT ADDITION TO SPECIFICATION B1.2

Add clause NT3 and clause NT4 as follows—

NT3 Strengthened area

Where a residential building of Class 2, 3, 9a or 9c, in Region C as defined by AS/NZS 1170.2, is designed to be used by the Aged or Infirm it shall incorporate a "strengthened area" for use as shelter during cyclonic conditions and must comply with the following criteria:

("strengthened area" is defined as the strengthening of an area to increase its potential to facilitate debris protection)

- (a) The *floor area* of the "strengthened area" is to be calculated at the rate of 1.2 m² per person normally accommodated within the building.
- (b) The minimum standard of debris protection to be achieved is represented by the following construction:
 - (i) 200 mm masonry block walls reinforced in accordance with the Northern Territory Deemed to Comply Standards (DTC) and core filled every core; or
Timber or steel framed walls clad internally and externally with 18 mm structural ply, screw fixed at 150 mm centres to studs, plates and noggin; and
 - (ii) Ceiling battens strapped to truss bottom chords or ceiling joists in accordance with the DTC Standard; and
18 mm structural ply screw fixed to ceiling battens at 150 mm centres; and
 - (iii) All doors serving the strengthened area are to be internal and are to be solid core, inward opening with barrel bolts fitted to the top and bottom; and
 - (iv) All *windows* protected with debris screens in accordance with DTC Standards.

NT4 Masonry veneer construction

Masonry veneer construction must be designed so that the structural framing, to which the masonry veneer is tied, will ensure the stability of the masonry veneer

SECTION E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

PART E1 FIRE-FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

NT E1.5 Sprinklers

Insert provisions for Class 9a buildings in Table E1.5 as follows:

NT Table E1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRINKLERS

Occupancy	When sprinklers are required
Class 9a	if more than one <i>storey</i>

SECTION F HEALTH AND AMENITY**PART F5 SOUND TRANSMISSION AND INSULATION**

Delete Part F5 and insert NT Part F5 as follows:

OBJECTIVE**NT FO5**

The *Objective* of this Part is to safeguard occupants from illness or loss of amenity as a result of undue sound being transmitted—

- (a) between adjoining *sole-occupancy units*; and
- (b) from common spaces to *sole-occupancy units*.

Application:

NT FO5 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 9c *aged care building*.

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT**NT FF5.1**

A building element which separates *sole-occupancy units*, or separates a *sole-occupancy unit* from a common space within the building, is to be constructed to prevent undue sound transmission.

Application:

NT FF5.1 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 9c *aged care building*.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

NT FP5.1

Floors separating *sole-occupancy units* must provide insulation against the transmission of airborne and impact generated sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

Application:

NT FP5.1 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 9c aged care building.

NT FP5.2

Walls separating—

- (a) *sole-occupancy units*; or
- (b) a *sole-occupancy unit* from a plant room, lift *shaft*, stairway, *public corridor*, public lobby or the like,

must provide insulation against the transmission of airborne and impact generated sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

Application:

NT FP5.2 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building.

NT FP5.3

The *required* sound insulation of floors or walls must not be compromised by the incorporation or penetration of a pipe or other service element.

Application:

NT FP5.3 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 9c aged care building.

NT FP5.4

Walls separating—

- (a) *sole-occupancy units*; or
- (b) a *sole-occupancy unit* from a kitchen, bathroom, *sanitary compartment* (not being an associated ensuite), laundry, plant room or utilities room,

must provide insulation against the transmission of airborne sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants; and

- (c) a *sole-occupancy unit* from a kitchen or laundry,

must provide insulation against the transmission of impact generated sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

Application:

NT FP5.4 only applies to a Class 9c *aged care building*.

NT F5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (a) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed to comply with the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*, *Performance Requirements* NT FP5.1 to NT FP5.4 are satisfied by complying with NT F5.1 to NT F5.8.
- (b) Where a *Building Solution* is proposed as an *Alternative Solution* to the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of NT F5.1 to NT F5.8, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with A0.10.

NT F5.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 9c *aged care buildings*.

NT F5.2 Weighted sound reduction index: Interpretation

A form of construction *required* to have a certain weighted sound reduction index (R_w) must—

- (a) have the *required* value determined under AS/NZS 1276.1, or ISO 717 1; or
- (b) comply with NT Specification F5.2.

NT F5.3 Sound insulation of floors between units

A floor separating *sole-occupancy units* must have an R_w not less than 45.

NT F5.4 Sound insulation of walls between units

A wall must have an R_w not less than 45 if it separates—

- (a) *sole-occupancy units*; or
- (b) a *sole-occupancy unit* not within a Class 9c *aged care building* from a plant room, lift shaft, stairway, *public corridor*, hallway or the like.
- (c) a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 9c *aged care building* from a kitchen, bathroom, *sanitary compartment* (not being an associated ensuite), laundry, plant room or utilities room.

NT F5.5 Walls between a bathroom, sanitary compartment, laundry or kitchen and a habitable room in adjoining unit

- (a) Except for a Class 9c *aged care building*, a wall separating a bathroom, *sanitary compartment*, laundry or kitchen in one *sole-occupancy unit* from a *habitable room* (other than a kitchen) in an adjoining unit must—
 - (i) have an R_w of not less than 50; and
 - (ii) provide a satisfactory level of insulation against impact sound; and

- (iii) not incorporate a duct which reduces the R_w of the wall to less than 50.
- (b) A wall satisfies (a)(i) and (a)(ii) if it is—
 - (i) in accordance with **NT Table F5.5**, or
 - (ii) for other than masonry, in 2 or more separate leaves without rigid mechanical connection except at their periphery; or
 - (iii) identical with a prototype that is no less resistant to the transmission of impact sound when tested in accordance with **NT Specification F5.5** than a wall listed in **NT Table F5.5**.

NT Table F5.5 CONSTRUCTION OF WALLS TO REDUCE IMPACT SOUND

Cavity brickwork— Two leaves of 90 mm brick masonry with— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) all joints filled solid with mortar; and (ii) an air space not less than 40 mm between the leaves; and (iii) the leaves connected only by ties in accordance with AS 3700.
Single leaf brickwork— 110 mm thick brick masonry with— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) each face rendered 13 mm thick; and (ii) 50 mm x 12 mm thick timber battens at not more than 610 mm centres fixed to each face but not recessed into the render; and (iii) one layer of 12 mm thick softboard nailed to the battens; and (iv) 6 mm thick medium density hardboard adhesive-fixed to the softboard.
Concrete blockwork— 190 mm thick concrete block masonry with— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) each face of the blocks fitted with 50 mm x 50 mm timber battens, spaced at not more than 610 mm centres, screw-fixed into resilient plugs with rubber inserts; and (ii) the space between the battens completely filled with mineral or glass wool blanket or batts not less than 50 mm thick; and (iii) the outer face of the battens finished with plasterboard not less than 10 mm thick or other material with a mass per unit area not less than 7.3 kg/m².

NT F5.6 Soil and waste pipes to be separated

If a soil or waste pipe, including a pipe that is embedded in or passes through a floor, serves or passes through more than one *sole-occupancy unit*—

- (a) the pipe must be separated from the rooms of any *sole-occupancy unit* by construction with an R_w not less than—
 - (i) 45 if the adjacent room is a *habitable room* (other than a kitchen); or
 - (ii) 30 if the adjacent room is a kitchen or any other room; and

- (b) a door or panel providing access to the pipe must not open into any *habitable room* (other than a kitchen); and
- (c) an access door or panel in any other part must be firmly fixed so as to overlap the frame or rebate of the frame by not less than 10 mm, be fitted with a sealing gasket along all edges and constructed of—
 - (i) wood, particleboard or blockboard not less than 38 mm thick; or
 - (ii) compressed fibre reinforced cement sheeting not less than 9 mm thick; or
 - (iii) other suitable material with a mass per unit area not less than 24.4 kg/m².

NT F5.7 Isolation of pumps

A flexible coupling must be used at the point of connection between the service pipes in a building and any circulating or other pump.

NT F5.8 Walls between a bedroom and kitchen or laundry in a Class 9c building

In addition to **NT F5.4**, a wall separating a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 9c *aged care building* from a kitchen or laundry must—

- (a) for other than masonry, be two or more separate leaves without rigid mechanical connection except at their periphery; or
- (b) be identical with a prototype that is no less resistant to the transmission of impact sound when tested in accordance with **NT Specification F5.5** than a wall listed in **Table 2 of NT Specification F5.2**.

SPECIFICATION **F5.2** SOUND INSULATION FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. Scope

This Specification lists the weighted sound reduction index (R_w) for some common forms of construction.

2. Construction deemed-to-satisfy

The forms of construction listed in **Table 2** are considered to have the R_w stated in that Table if installed as follows:

- (a) **Masonry**—Units must be laid with all joints filled solid, including those between the masonry and any adjoining construction.
- (b) **Concrete slabs**—Joints between concrete slabs and any adjoining construction must be filled solid.
- (c) **Plasterboard**—
 - (i) if one layer is *required* under this Specification, it must be screw-fixed to the studs with joints staggered on opposite faces; and
 - (ii) if 2 layers are *required*, the first layer must be fixed according to (i) and the second layer must be fixed to the first layer with nails, screws or adhesive so that the joints do not coincide with those of the first layer; and
 - (iii) joints between sheets or between sheets and any adjoining construction must be taped and filled solid; and
 - (iv) fire-protective grade plasterboard must be the special grade manufactured for use in *fire-resisting construction*.
- (d) **Steel studs and perimeter members**—
 - (i) the section of steel must be not less than 0.6 mm thick; and
 - (ii) studs must be not less than 63 mm in depth unless another depth is listed in **Table 2**; and
 - (iii) studs must be fixed to steel top and bottom plates of sufficient depth to permit secure fixing of the plasterboard; and
 - (iv) all steel members at the perimeter of the wall must be securely fixed to the adjoining structure and bedded in resilient compound or the joints must be caulked so that there are no voids between the steel members and the wall.

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions***Table 2 R_w APPLICABLE TO CONSTRUCTION**

Construction	R _w (not less than)
WALLS	
Clay brickwork—	
(a) 230 mm thick in one or more leaves and with a mass per unit area of not less than 290 kg/m ²	45
(b) 110 mm thick rendered 13 mm thick on both sides with a mass per unit area of the unrendered wall being not less than 190 kg/m ²	45
(c) 110 mm thick, of semi-dry-pressed bricks and rendered 13 mm on one side, the mass per unit area of the unrendered wall being not less than 215 kg/m ²	45
(d) 110 mm thick, of extruded brick and rendered 13 mm on one side, the mass per unit area of the unrendered wall being not less than 180 kg/m ²	45
Concrete brickwork — 110 mm thick with a mass per unit area of not less than 195 kg/m²	45
Concrete blockwork—	
(a) 190 mm thick with a mass per unit area of not less than 215 kg/m ²	45
(b) (i) 140 mm thick, the wall thickness of the blocks being not less than 44 mm and with— 50 mm x 50 mm timber battens spaced at not more than 610 mm centres screw-fixed on one face of the blocks into resilient plugs with rubber inserts between battens and the wall; (ii) the face of the battens clad with 13 mm thick standard plasterboard; and (iii) a mass per unit area of the whole system of not less than 220 kg/m ²	45
Concrete—	
(a) In-situ concrete — 125 mm thick and with a density of not less than 2200 kg/m ³	45
(b) In-situ concrete — 100 mm thick and with a density of not less than 2500 kg/m ³	45
(c) Precast concrete — 100 mm thick and without joints	45
Steel stud walling—	
(a) with 2 layers of 16 mm thick fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to each face	45

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions***Table 2 R_w APPLICABLE TO CONSTRUCTION (Continued)**

Construction	R _w (not less than)
(b) with—	45
(i) 1 layer of 13 mm thick fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to one face, and before fixing, 50 mm thick mineral or glass wool blanket or batts stapled to the back of each sheet so that the sheet is completely covered; and	
(ii) 2 layers of 13 mm thick fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to the other face	
(c) with—	45
(i) 1 layer of 16 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to one face; and	
(ii) 50 mm thick mineral or glass wool blanket or batts wedged firmly between the studs; and	
(iii) 2 layers of fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to the other face, the inner layer being 16 mm thick and the outer layer being 13 mm	
(d) with 2 layers of 13 mm plasterboard on both sides of 75 mm studs	45
FLOORS—	
Concrete—	
(a) In-situ concrete slab — 125 mm thick and with a density of not less than 2200 kg/m ³	45
(b) In-situ concrete slab — 100 mm thick and with a density of not less than 2500 kg/m ³	45
(c) Pre-cast concrete slab — 100 mm thick and without joints	45
Timber — comprising—	
(a) timber joists not less than 175 mm x 50 mm; and	45
(b) 75 mm thick mineral or glass wool blanket or batts cut to fit tightly between joists and laid on 10 mm thick plasterboard fixed to underside of joists; and	
(c) 25 mm thick mineral or glass wool blanket or batts laid over entire floor, including tops of joists before flooring is laid; and	
(d) tongued-and-grooved boards not less than 19 mm thick, secured to 75 mm x 50 mm battens; and	
(e) the assembled flooring laid over the joists, but not fixed to them, with the battens lying between the joists	

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions***Table 2 R_w APPLICABLE TO CONSTRUCTION (Continued)**

Construction	R _w (not less than)
DUCTS OR OTHER CONSTRUCTION SEPARATING SOIL AND WASTE PIPES FROM UNITS	
Masonry — not less than 90 mm thick	30
Plasterboard — 2 layers of plasterboard—	
(a) each 10 mm thick, fixed to timber studs not less than 75 mm x 50 mm and spaced at not more than 400 mm centres.	30
(b) each 13 mm thick, one on each side of steel studs not less than 50 mm deep and spaced at not more than 400 mm centres	30

SPECIFICATION **F5.5** IMPACT SOUND — TEST OF EQUIVALENCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. Scope

This Specification describes a method of test to determine the comparative resistance of walls to the transmission of impact sound.

2. Construction to be tested

- (a) The test is conducted on a specimen of prototype wall construction and on a specimen of one or other of the constructions specified in **NT Table F5.5**.
- (b) The testing of a construction specified in **NT Table F5.5** need not be repeated for subsequent comparisons provided complete records of the results, the test equipment and the technique of testing are kept so that identical equipment can be employed and an identical technique can be adopted in the testing of specimens of prototype wall construction.

3. Method

- (a) The wall constructions to be compared must be tested in accordance with AS 1191.
- (b) A horizontal steel platform 510 mm x 460 mm x 10 mm thick must be placed with one long edge in continuous and direct contact with the wall to be tested on the side of the wall on which the impact sound is to be generated.
- (c) A tapping machine complying with *ISO 140/6—1998 (E)* must be mounted centrally on the steel platform.
- (d) The sound transmission through the wall must be determined in accordance with AS 1191 except that the tapping machine as mounted on the steel platform must be used as the source of sound.
- (e) The impact sound pressure levels measured in the receiving room must be converted into normalised levels using a reference equivalent absorption area of 10 m².

SECTION H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

NT PART H101 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

Insert NT Part H102 as follows:

NT PART H102 PREMISES TO BE USED FOR ACTIVITIES INVOLVING SKIN PENETRATION

NT H102.1 Application of Part

This part applies to premises for tattooing, ear-piercing, acupuncture and like activities.

NT H102.2 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

NT H102.3 Washbasins

The area in which skin penetration is done must be provided with—

- (a) one wash basin for each 10, or part of 10 employees; and
- (b) an adequate supply of hot and cold water controlled by foot-operated or elbow-operated taps.

Insert NT Part H103 as follows:

NT PART H103 MORTUARIES

NT H103.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to any premises used for storage or preparation for burial, cremation or disposal by other means, of bodies of deceased persons.

NT H103.2 Layout of mortuary

- (a) A mortuary may be integral with the remainder of a building but must be separated physically from all public areas of that building.
- (b) Each mortuary at which bodies are prepared for burial, cremation or other disposal must be provided with a body preparation room that is capable of being isolated from the remainder of the premises.
- (c) A vehicle reception area or garage must be provided adjacent to and with direct access to the storage room or body preparation room to ensure that the transfer of uncoffined bodies is screened from public view.

- (d) Access to toilet and shower facilities from any other part of the mortuary premises must be only by way of an air lock.

NT H103.3 Construction of body preparation room

- (a) The floor must be—
 - (i) of impervious material with a smooth, unbroken surface; and
 - (ii) uniformly graded to a floor drain.
- (b) All walls and partitions must be of concrete or masonry with a smooth, unbroken finish for ease of cleaning.
- (c) All joints between the floor, walls, partitions, ceiling, ventilation grilles, fittings, pipework, *windows* and light fittings must be sealed with impervious material for ease of cleaning.
- (d) All joints between the floor and walls or partitions must be coved for ease of cleaning.
- (e) The body preparation room must be provided with at least one washbasin, fitted with elbow or foot-operated taps, and an adequate supply of hot and cold water.
- (f) The body preparation room must be provided with refrigerated storage facilities—
 - (i) with sufficient capacity for the storage of at least two adult bodies; and
 - (ii) capable of maintaining an internal temperature between 1°C and 5°C.

NT H103.4 Water supply and sewerage

Each mortuary with a body preparation room must be connected to—

- (a) a permanent water supply with a physical discontinuity between the water supply and all equipment, appliances, fittings and areas in the mortuary; and
- (b) a water carriage sewerage system.

SECTION I MAINTENANCE

PART I1 EQUIPMENT AND SAFETY INSTALLATIONS

Delete I1.1 and insert NT I1.1 as follows:

NT I1.1 Safety Measures

Safety measures in buildings must be maintained in accordance with the requirements of the following Australian Standards as appropriate:

- (a) AS 1851.1 Portable fire extinguishers
- (b) AS 1851.2 Fire hose reels
- (c) AS 1851.3 Automatic fire sprinkler systems
- (d) AS 1851.4 Fire hydrant installations
- (e) AS 1851.5 Automatic smoke/heat venting systems

- (f) AS 1851.6 Management procedures for maintaining the fire precaution features of air-handling systems
- (g) AS 1851.7 Fire-resistant door sets
- (h) AS 1851.8 Automatic fire detection and alarm systems
- (i) AS 1851.10 Emergency warning and intercommunication systems
- (j) AS/NZS 2293.2 Emergency evacuation lighting for buildings, Part 2 Inspection and maintenance

PART I2 ENERGY EFFICIENCY INSTALLATIONS

Delete Part I2 and insert the following:

NT PART I2 Energy Efficiency Installations

(deleted)

SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Delete Section J and insert the following:

NT Section J Energy Efficiency

For a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building, **Section J** is replaced with **Section J** of BCA 2009.

Section J does not apply to Class 3 and 5 - 9 buildings.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Building Act, Building Regulations and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Accommodation/Food Premises/Skin Penetration Activities/Mortuaries

1.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health and Community Services

Relevant Legislation

Public Health Act

2. Child Care

2.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health and Community Services

Relevant Legislation

Community Welfare Act

Community Welfare (Child Care) Regulations

3. Crown Land

3.1 Administering Agency

Department of Planning and Infrastructure

Relevant Legislation

Crown Lands Act

4. Dangerous Goods

4.1 Administering Agency

Department of Employment, Education and Training

Relevant Legislation

Dangerous Goods Act

5. Electrical Installations

5.1 Administering Agency

Department of Employment, Education and Training

Relevant Legislation

Electrical Workers and Contractors Act

Electricity Reform Act

Electricity Reform (Safety and Technical) Regulations

6. Fences — dividing

6.1 Administering Agency

Department of Justice

Relevant Legislation

Fences Act

7. Fire Prevention

7.1 Administering Agency

Northern Territory Fire and Rescue Service

Relevant Legislation

Fire and Emergency Act

8. Gas Installations**8.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Employment, Education and Training

Relevant Legislation

Work Health Act

Work Health (Occupational Health and Safety) Regulations

9. Historic Building**9.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Natural Resources, Environment and the Arts

Relevant Legislation

Heritage Conservation Act

10. Liquor — licensing**10.0 Administering Agency**

Department of Justice

Relevant Legislation

Liquor Act

11. Occupational Health and Safety**11.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Employment, Education and Training

Relevant Legislation

Work Health Act

12. Places of Public Entertainment**12.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Local Government, Housing and Sport

Council or Municipality

Relevant Legislation

Places of Public Entertainment Act

13. Planning Controls**13.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Planning and Infrastructure

Relevant Legislation

Planning Act

Planning Scheme

14. Plumbing Installations

14.1 Administering Agency

Department of Planning and Infrastructure

Relevant Legislation

Plumbers and Drainers Licensing Act

Building Act

15. Stormwater Drainage (Municipal Roads)

15.1 Administering Agency

Council or Municipality in which building is located

Relevant Legislation

Local Government Act

16. Stormwater Drainage (Territory Roads)

16.1 Administering Agency

Department of Planning and Infrastructure

Relevant Legislation

Control of Roads Act

17. Swimming Pools

17.1 Administering Agency

Department of Local Government, Housing and Sport

Relevant Legislation

Swimming Pool Safety Act

18. Water Supply and Sewage Services

18.1 Administering Agency

Power and Water Corporation

Relevant Legislation

Water Supply and Sewerage Services Act

APPENDIX

QUEENSLAND

INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia (BCA) provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in Queensland and shall be treated as amendments to the Code.

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX QUEENSLAND

Queensland

A GENERAL PROVISIONS

Qld Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

B STRUCTURE

Qld B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Qld GO5 Objective

Qld GF5.1 Functional Statement

Qld GP5.1 Performance Requirements

Qld G5.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Qld Part G101 CERTAIN ATTACHMENTS

Qld G101.1 Prevention of falls from buildings or structures

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

Qld Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 additional standards as follows:

Qld Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

No.	Date	Title	BCA clause(s)
AS 2626	1983	Industrial safety belts and harness — Selection, use and maintenance	Qld G101.1
BCA 2009	May 2009	Building Code of Australia	Qld Section J
Queensland Forest Service of the Department of Primary Industries Construction timbers in Queensland - Properties and specifications for satisfactory performance of construction timbers in Queensland - Class 1 and 10 buildings (Houses, carports, garages, greenhouses and sheds).			Qld B1.4

SECTION B STRUCTURE

PART B1 STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

After B1.4(f)(iii) insert Qld B1.4(f)(iv) as follows:

Qld B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

(f) Timber Construction:

- (iv) Timber used for structural purposes: a species scheduled for the appropriate use in Schedules A, B or C in Queensland Forest Service of the Department of Primary Industries Construction timbers in Queensland - Properties and specifications for satisfactory performance of construction timbers in Queensland - Class 1 and 10 buildings (Houses, carports, garages, greenhouses and sheds).

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

QLD PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS

Delete GO5 and insert Qld GO5 as follows:

OBJECTIVE

Qld GO5

The *Objective* of this Part is to—

- (a) safeguard occupants from injury; and
- (b) protect buildings,
from the effects of a bushfire.

Application

Qld GO5 only applies to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
- (b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building,
located in a *designated bushfire prone area*, but does not apply when the classified vegetation is Group F rainforest (excluding wet sclerophyll forest types), mangrove communities and grasslands under 300 mm high.

Delete GF5.1 and insert Qld GF5.1 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT

Qld GF5.1

A building constructed in a *designated bushfire prone area* is to provide a resistance to bushfires in order to reduce the danger to life and minimise the risk of the loss of the building.

Application

Qld GF5.1 only applies to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
- (b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building,

Qld GO5

located in a *designated bushfire prone area*, but does not apply when the classified vegetation is Group F rainforest (excluding wet sclerophyll forest types), mangrove communities and grasslands under 300 mm high.

Delete GP5.1 and insert Qld GP5.1 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT

Qld GP5.1

A building that is constructed in a *designated bushfire prone area* must be designed and constructed to reduce the risk of ignition from a bushfire while the fire front passes.

Application

Qld GP5.1 only applies to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
- (b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building,

located in a *designated bushfire prone area*, but does not apply when the classified vegetation is Group F rainforest (excluding wet sclerophyll forest types), mangrove communities and grasslands under 300 mm high.

QUEENSLAND

Delete G5.1 and insert Qld G5.1 as follows:

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Qld G5.1

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
- (b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building,

located in a *designated bushfire prone area*, but does not apply when the classified vegetation is Group F rainforest (excluding wet sclerophyll forest types), mangrove communities and grasslands under 300 mm high.

Add Qld Part G101 as follows:

QLD PART G101 CERTAIN ATTACHMENTS

Qld G101.1 Prevention of falls from buildings or structures

Where a person is exposed to the hazard of falling from a building or structure while cleaning or maintenance work is being carried out—

- (a) a work system designed to prevent such falls must be used; and
- (b) where safety belt anchorage points are used they must be positioned on the building or structure so that a lifeline or safety harness may be attached before proceeding to a point where it is possible to fall; and
- (c) anchorage points for the attachment of safety harnesses must comply with AS 2626.

Insert SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Insert the following:

In Queensland, for a Class 2 building, **Section J** is replaced with **Section J** of BCA 2009.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

All legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings are consolidated into the Building Act 1975 and other legislative instruments under that Act, such as regulations, codes (including this Code) and standards.

APPENDIX

SOUTH AUSTRALIA

INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the BCA provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in South Australia.

These variations and additions are to be treated as amendments to the BCA and apply to the construction or alteration of all buildings requiring approval under the Development Act 1993 and Regulations 2008.

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX SOUTH AUSTRALIA

INTRODUCTION

A GENERAL PROVISIONS

- SA A1.1 Definitions
- SA Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference
- SA A2.2 * * * * *

C FIRE RESISTANCE

- SA C1.1 Type of construction required
- SA C2.15 Class 2 external walls exposed to brush fences

D ACCESS AND EGRESS

- SA D3.1 General building access requirements
- SA Table D3.1a Additional requirements for access for people with a disability

F HEALTH AND AMENITY

- SA FP1.5, SA FP1.6 and SA FP1.8 Performance Requirements
- SA F1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- SA F1.7 Waterproofing of wet areas in buildings
- SA F1.9 Damp-proofing
- SA F1.10 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground
- SA F1.11 Provision of floor wastes
- SA F2.4 Accessible sanitary facilities
- SA Table F2.4(a)(i) Additional accessible unisex sanitary compartments
- SA Table F2.4(b)(i) Additional accessible unisex showers

G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

- SA G5.1 Application of Part
- SA G5.2 Bushfire Attack Levels
- SA G5.3 Construction Requirements

SA Part G7 ACCESS FOR MAINTENANCE

- SA G07 Objective
- SA GF7.1 and SA GF7.2 Functional Statements
- SA GP7.1 and SA GP7.2 Performance Requirements
- SA G7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- SA G7.1 Application of Part
- SA G7.2 Access for window cleaning

SA G7.3 Access for inspection and maintenance between buildings

SA Part G8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

SA GO8 Objective
SA GF8.1 Functional Statement
SA GP8.1 Performance Requirement
SA G8.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
SA G8.1 Application of Part
SA G8.2 Attachments to buildings

H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

SA Part H2 BULK GRAIN STORAGE FACILITIES

SA H2.1 Application of Part
SA H2.2 Concessions for bulk grain storage facilities

SA Part H3 FARM BUILDINGS

SA H3.1 Application of Part
SA H3.2 Concessions and additions for farm buildings

I MAINTENANCE

SA I1.1 Safety installations
SA I1.2 Mechanical ventilation and hot water, warm water and cooling water systems

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SA JP4 Performance Requirement
SA JV4 Verification Method

SA PART J1 BUILDING FABRIC

SA J1.3 Roof and ceiling construction

SA PART J7 HOT WATER SUPPLY AND SWIMMING POOL AND SPA POOL PLANT

SA J7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
SA J7.2 Hot water supply
SA J7.5 Complying heated water services

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1 INTERPRETATION

SA A1.1 Definitions

Insert definition for *brush fence* as follows:

Brush fence means a fence or gate that is primarily constructed of Broombrush (Melaluca Uncinata).

Insert definition for *rated hot water delivery* as follows:

Rated hot water delivery means rated hot water delivery as specified in AS 1056.

Insert definition for *Small-scale Technology Certificate* as follows:

Small-scale Technology Certificate means a certificate issued under the Commonwealth Government's Small-scale Renewable Energy Scheme.

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 additional standards as follows:

SA Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

SA Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

No	Date	Title	BCA clause(s)
AS 1056		Storage water heaters	
Part 1	1991	General requirements	SA A1.1
AS 1530.8		Test on elements of construction for buildings exposed to simulated bushfire attack	
Part 1	2007	Radiant heat and small flaming sources	SA G5.3
Part 2	2007	Large flaming sources	SA G5.3
AS/NZS 1891		Industrial fall-arrest systems and devices	
Part 4	2000	Selection, use and maintenance	SA G7.2
AS/NZS 4234	2008	Heated water systems — Calculation of energy consumption	SA JV4
AS 4552	2005	Gas fired heaters for hot water supply and/or central heating	SA J7.5
Minister's Specifications			
SA F1.7	2012	Waterproofing in buildings — Additional requirements	SA F1.7
SA H2.2	1997	Construction of bulk grain storage facilities	SA H2.2

SA Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS (Continued)

No	Date	Title	BCA clause(s)
SA H3.2	2004	Concessions and additional requirements for farm buildings	SA H3.2
SA 76	2000	Maintenance and testing of safety installations. Schedule of essential safety provisions	SA I1.1, SA I1.2
Waterworks Regulations	1996		SA J7.2

PART A2 ACCEPTANCE OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

SA A2.2 * * * * *

This clause has been deliberately left blank.

SECTION C FIRE RESISTANCE

PART C1 FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

After C1.1(a)(iv) add SA C1.1(a)(v), and after C1.1(b) add SA C1.1(c) and (d) as follows:

SA C1.1 Type of construction required

- (a) The minimum Type of *fire-resisting construction* of a building must be that specified in **Table C1.1** and **Specification C1.1**, except as allowed for—
 - (v) Class 2 buildings located within 3 m of a *brush fence* and Class 10b *brush fences* located within 3 m of a Class 2 building in **C1.1(c)** and **(d)**.
- (c) In addition to the minimum *fire-resisting construction* requirements of **Table C1.1** and **Specification C1.1** a Class 2 buildings must not be constructed within 3 m of a Class 10b *brush fence* unless any part of the building within 3 m of the *brush fence* complies with the *fire resisting* requirements of **SA C2.15**.
- (d) A Class 10b *brush fence* must not be constructed within 3 m of a Class 2 building unless any part of the building within 3 m of the *brush fence* complies with the *fire resisting* requirements of **SA C2.15**.

PART C2 COMPARTMENTATION AND SEPARATION

After C2.14 add SA C2.15 as follows:

SA C2.15 Class 2 external walls exposed to brush fences

Where the distance between the *external wall* of a Class 2 building and a *brush fence* is less than 3 m, the Class 2 building must comply with the following:

- (a) An *external wall* or part of an *external wall* exposed to the *brush fence* must be *fire resisting* and extend to the underside of a *non-combustible* roof covering or a *non-*

combustible eaves lining or to a point at which exposure to the *brush fence* no longer exists and must—

- (i) have a FRL of at least 60/60/60 when tested from the outside; or
 - (ii) be of masonry veneer construction in which the external masonry veneer is not less than 90 mm thick; or
 - (iii) be of masonry construction not less than 90 mm thick; and
 - (iv) have any exposed openings protected in accordance with **C3.4**.
- (b) Where an *external wall* is *required* by (a) to be *fire resisting*, only that part of the wall, including openings within the specified distance, need to be constructed in that manner.
- (c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to sub-floor vents, roof vents, weepholes, control joints, construction joints and penetrations for pipes, conduits and the like.
- (d) The following are permitted to encroach within 3 m of a *brush fence*—
- (i) *non-combustible* fascias, gutters, downpipes; and
 - (ii) eaves with *non-combustible* roof cladding and *non-combustible* lining; and
 - (iii) flues, chimneys, pipes, domestic fuel tanks, cooling or heating appliances or other services; and
 - (iv) light fittings, electricity or gas meters, aerials or antennas; and
 - (v) pergolas, sun blinds or water tanks; and
 - (vi) unroofed terraces, landings, steps and ramps, not more than 1 m in height.
- (e) The distance from any point on an *external wall* of a building to a *brush fence* is measured in any direction from the *external wall*.

SECTION D ACCESS AND EGRESS

PART D3 ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY

Delete D3.1 and substitute:

SA D3.1 General building access requirements

Buildings and parts of buildings must be *accessible* as *required* by Table D3.1 and SA Table D3.1a, unless exempt by D3.4.

SA Table D3.1a ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY

Class of building	Access requirements
Class 2	
In developments consisting of 20 or more residential <i>sole-occupancy units</i>	To and within one residential <i>sole-occupancy unit</i> or 5% of the total number of residential <i>sole-occupancy units</i> provided, whichever is the greater

SECTION F HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F1 DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING

Delete FP1.5 and add SA FP1.5 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

SA FP1.5

- (a) Moisture from the ground must be prevented from causing—
 - (i) undue dampness or deterioration of building elements; and
 - (ii) unhealthy or dangerous conditions, or loss of amenity for occupants.
- (b) Barriers installed to prevent transfer of moisture from the ground must have—
 - (i) high resistance to moisture penetration; and
 - (ii) high resistance to damage during construction; and
 - (iii) high resistance to degradation by dissolved salts.

Delete FP1.6 add SA FP1.6 as follows:

SA FP1.6

Accidental water overflow from a bathroom, laundry facility or the like must be prevented from penetrating to adjoining rooms or spaces.

After FP1.7 add SA FP1.8 as follows:

SA FP1.8

In laundries, bathrooms or rooms containing shower facilities the floors must be installed in a manner that will prevent accumulation of surface water which could create unhealthy or hazardous conditions.

Delete F1.0(b) and add SA F1.0(b) as follows:

SA F1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (b) With the exception of (a), *Performance Requirements* **FP1.1** to **FP1.4**, **SA FP1.5**, **SA FP1.6**, **FP1.7** and **SA FP1.8** are satisfied by complying with **F1.1** to **F1.6**, **SA F1.7**, **SA F1.9** to **SA F1.11**, **F1.12** and **F1.13**.

Delete F1.7 and insert SA F1.7 as follows:

SA F1.7 Waterproofing of wet areas in buildings

- (a) In a Class 2 and 3 building and a Class 4 part of building, building elements in *wet areas* must—
 - (i) be *water resistant* or *waterproof* in accordance with **Table F1.7**; and

- (ii) comply with AS 3740; and
 - (iii) comply with the additional requirements of Minister's Specification SA F1.7.
- (b) In a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building, building elements in the bathroom or shower room, a slop hopper or sink compartment, a laundry or *sanitary compartment* must—
- (i) be *water resistant* or *waterproof* in accordance with **Table F1.7**; and
 - (ii) comply with AS 3740; and
 - (iii) comply with the additional requirements of Minister's Specification SA F1.7.

Delete F1.9(b) and insert SA F1.9(b) as follows:

SA F1.9 Damp-proofing

- (b) Damp-proof courses must exhibit long term resistance to degradation by dissolved salts in groundwater and consist of—
- (i) embossed black polyethylene film meeting the requirements of clause 7.6 of AS/NZS 2904; or
 - (ii) polyethylene coated aluminium meeting the requirements of clause 7.4 of AS/NZS 2904; or
 - (iii) bitumen impregnated materials of not less than 2.5 mm thickness, meeting the requirements of clause 7.5 of AS/NZS 2904, when used in walls not higher than 7.8 m above the level of the damp-proof course.

Delete F1.10 and insert SA F1.10 as follows:

SA F1.10 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground

- (a) If a floor of a room is laid on the ground or on fill, a damp-proofing membrane complying with Section 5.3.3 of AS 2870 must be installed.
- (b) A damp-proofing membrane need not be provided if—
- (i) weatherproofing is not *required*; or
 - (ii) the floor is the base of a stair, lift or similar *shaft* which is adequately drained by gravitation or mechanical means.

Delete F1.11 and insert SA F1.11 as follows:

SA F1.11 Provision of floor wastes

- (a) Floors in the following rooms or areas must be graded to a floor waste:
- (i) A bathroom.
 - (ii) Areas adjacent to baths and spas (including the floor area under a free standing bath).
 - (iii) A room containing a vessel.
- (b) Floors need not be graded to a floor waste in accordance with (a) if all vessels—
- (i) are provided with in-built overflow protection; or

- (ii) have permanent open trapped connection to the waste system.
- (c) The fall of the floor surface to a floor waste *required* by (a) must be—
 - (i) between 1:60 and 1:80 in the *shower area*; and
 - (ii) between 1:80 and 1:100 in other areas.

PART F2 SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

Delete F2.4(a) to F2.4(b) and insert SA F2.4(a) to SA F2.4(b) as follows:

SA F2.4 Accessible sanitary facilities

- (a) *accessible unisex sanitary compartments* must be provided in *accessible* parts of the building in accordance with Table F2.4(a) and SA Table F2.4(a)(i); and

SA Table F2.4(a)(i) ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE UNISEX SANITARY COMPARTMENTS

Class of building	Minimum facility for use by people with a disability
Class 2 In every <i>sole-occupancy unit</i> required by SA Table D3.1a to be <i>accessible</i>	Not less than 1

- (b) *accessible unisex showers* must be provided in accordance with Table F2.4(b) and SA Table F2.4(b)(i); and

SA Table F2.4(b)(i) ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE UNISEX SHOWERS

Class of building	Minimum facility for use by people with a disability
Class 2 In every <i>sole-occupancy unit</i> required by SA Table D3.1a to be <i>accessible</i>	Not less than 1

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS

Delete G5.1 and insert SA G5.1:

SA G5.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
- (b) a Class 10a building or deck located within 6 m of an associated Class 2 or 3 building that is *required* to comply with this Part,

located in a *designated bushfire prone area*.

Delete G5.2 and insert SA G5.2

SA G5.2 Bushfire attack levels

Where a *site* is located in a *designated bushfire prone area*, the bushfire attack level that applies to the *site* is—

- (a) for areas identified as General Bushfire Risk areas in South Australian Development Plans, the BAL — Low bushfire attack level; and
- (b) for areas identified as Medium Bushfire Risk areas in South Australian Development Plans, the BAL — 12.5 bushfire attack level; and
- (c) for areas identified as High Bushfire Risk areas in South Australian Development Plans, the bushfire attack level assessed for the *site* in accordance with AS 3959; and
- (d) for Excluded Areas within 500 m of a High Bushfire Risk area, as identified in South Australian Development Plans, the BAL — Low bushfire attack level; and
- (e) for Excluded Areas within 100 m of a High Bushfire Risk area, as identified in South Australian Development Plans, the bushfire attack level assessed for the *site* in accordance with AS 3959.

Add SA G5.3 as follows:

SA G5.3 Construction requirements

- (a) A Class 2 or 3 building, or a Class 10a building or deck *required* to comply with this Part, must be constructed in accordance with **SA Table G5.1** for the bushfire attack level for the *site*.
- (b) A Class 10a building or deck is not *required* to comply with **SA G5.3(a)** if it is separated from a Class 2 or 3 building by—
 - (i) for a Class 10a building or deck attached to or sharing a common roof space with a Class 2 or 3 building, a wall that extends from the footings or concrete slab to the underside of a *non-combustible* roof covering and complies with one of the following:
 - (A) The wall has an FRL of not less than 60/60/60 for *loadbearing* walls, and -/60/60 for *non-loadbearing* walls when tested from the Class 10 side; or
 - (B) The wall is of masonry, earth wall or masonry-veneer construction where the masonry leaf is not less than 90 mm in thickness.
 - (ii) for a Class 10a building or deck located below a Class 2 or 3 building, separating floor and/or wall construction that complies with one of the following:
 - (A) The floor and/or wall has an FRL of not less than 60/60/60 for *loadbearing* construction, and -/60/60 for *non-loadbearing* construction when tested from the Class 10 side; or
 - (B) Where part or all of the separating construction is a wall, the wall need not comply with (A) if it complies with **SA G5.3(b)(i)(B)**.

- (iii) for a Class 10a building or deck located within 6 m of a Class 2 or 3 building, comply with **SA G5.3(b)(i)**.
- (c) Openings in separating construction referred to in **SA G5.3(b)(i)** and **(ii)** must comply with the following:
 - (i) Doorways must be protected by *-/60/30 self-closing* fire doors.
 - (ii) *Windows* must be protected by *-/60/-* fire windows permanently fixed in the closed position.
 - (iii) Other openings (excluding control and construction joints, sub-floor vents, weepholes and penetrations for pipes and conduits) must be protected by construction with an FRL of not less than *-/60/-*.
- (d) For the purposes of **SA Table G5.1** bushfire-resisting timber is timber that is in solid, laminated or reconstituted form that meets the criteria specified in Appendix F of AS 3959.
- (e) Where any material, element of construction or system satisfies the test criteria of either AS 1530.8.1, for BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29 and BAL — 40 and AS 1530.8.2 for BAL — FZ it satisfies the requirements of that BAL.
- (f) If any material, element of construction or system satisfies the test criteria without screening for ember protection, the requirements for screening of openable parts of *windows* must still apply.
- (g) Polycarbonate may be used as roof sheeting for Class 10a buildings located within 6 m of a Class 2 or 3 building for BAL — Low, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19 and BAL — 29 sites.

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES

FLOOR SYSTEMS	
1. BAL — Low	
A flooring system must comply with one or a combination of the following:	
(a)	A concrete slab-on-ground.
(b)	A suspended concrete floor.
(c)	A framed floor where, if the underside is greater than 600 mm above finished ground or paving level, the sub-floor space is enclosed with—
(i)	a <i>non-combustible</i> sheet material. If fibre reinforced cement sheets are used for this purpose, the sheets must have a minimum thickness of 6 mm; or
(ii)	a wall that extends around the perimeter of the floor from the underside of the lowest framing member to finished ground or paving level and is constructed in accordance with clauses 7.4.1 and 7.4.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959. <i>Sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5; or

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

(iii)	a vertical <i>non-combustible</i> sheet material that extends around the perimeter of the floor from the underside of the lowest framing member to finished ground or paving level. If fibre reinforced cement sheets are used for this purpose, the sheets must have a minimum thickness of 6 mm.
(d)	A framed floor where, if any joist and/or bearer is less than 600 mm above finished ground or paving level, the sub-floor space is—
(i)	if unenclosed, constructed from flooring materials, including bearers, joists and flooring that comply with clause 7.3.2.2 (a) and (b) of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959; or
(ii)	enclosed with a wall complying with (c)(ii); or
(iii)	enclosed with <i>non-combustible</i> sheet material that extends not less than 400 mm above finished ground or paving level and to the bottom of the wall sheeting material. If fibre reinforced cement sheets are used for this purpose, the sheets must have a minimum thickness of 6 mm.

A flooring system complying with (c) or (d)(ii) or (iii) must have all of the joints in the external surface of walls covered, sealed, overlapped, backed or butt-jointed to prevent gaps greater than 3 mm. Alternatively, *sarking-type material* can be applied over the frame prior to fixing any external sheeting.

2. BAL — 12.5

As per **BAL — Low** requirements of this table, with the following variation—

- (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used to enclose a subfloor space.

3. BAL — 19

As per **BAL — Low** requirements of this table, with the following variation—

- (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used to enclose a subfloor space.

4. BAL — 29

As per **BAL — Low** requirements of this table, with the following variation—

- (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used to enclose a subfloor space.

5. BAL — 40

A flooring system must comply with clause 8.3 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation—

- (a) Where a wall is used to enclose the sub-floor space, any *required sarking-type material* must have a *Flammability Index* of not more than 5.
- (b) The sub-floor space of a framed floor must not be enclosed with mesh or perforated sheet made from corrosion-resistant steel, bronze or aluminium.

6. BAL — FZ

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

A flooring system must comply with clause 9.3 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation—

- (a) Where a wall is used to enclose the sub-floor space, any *required sarking-type material* must have a *Flammability Index* of not more than 5.
- (b) The sub-floor space of a framed floor must not be enclosed with mesh or perforated sheet made from corrosion-resistant steel, bronze or aluminium.

SUPPORTING POSTS, COLUMNS, STUMPS, PIERS AND POLES (except in sub-floor spaces enclosed by aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet as described in FLOORING SYSTEMS 1 BAL — Low (d))**1. BAL — Low**

Supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles must comply with one or a combination of the following:

- (a) A *non-combustible* material.
- (b) Bushfire-resisting timber for not less than 400 mm above finished ground or paving level.
- (c) Timber mounted on metal stirrups with a clearance of not less than 75 mm above finished ground or paving level.

2. BAL — 12.5

As per BAL — Low requirements in this table.

3. BAL — 19

As per BAL — Low requirements in this table.

4. BAL — 29

Supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles must comply with clause 7.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959.

5. BAL — 40

Supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles must comply with clause 8.2 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.

6. BAL — FZ

Supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles must comply with clause 9.2 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.

EXTERNAL WALLS**1. BAL — Low**

No requirements.

2. BAL — 12.5

The exposed components of *external walls* must comply with one or a combination of the following:

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

(a)	Clauses 7.4.1(a) and 7.4.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 and any <i>sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.
(b)	A timber or steel-framed wall that— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) is sarked on the outside of the frame with <i>sarking-type material</i> having a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5; and <li>(ii) complies with clauses 5.4.1 and 5.4.2 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.
3.	BAL — 19
The exposed components of <i>external walls</i> must comply with one or a combination of the following:	
(a)	Clauses 7.4.1(a) and 7.4.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 and any <i>sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.
(b)	A timber or steel-framed wall that— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) is sarked on the outside of the frame with <i>sarking-type material</i> having a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5; and <li>(ii) complies with clauses 6.4.1 and 6.4.2 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959.
4.	BAL — 29
The exposed components of <i>external walls</i> must comply with clauses 7.4.1 and 7.4.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 and any <i>sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.	
5.	BAL — 40
The exposed components of <i>external walls</i> must comply with clauses 8.4.1 and 8.4.2 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 and any <i>sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.	
6.	BAL — FZ
The exposed components of <i>external walls</i> must comply with clauses 9.4.1 and 9.4.2 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 and any <i>sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.	
WINDOWS	
1.	BAL — Low
No requirements.	
2.	BAL — 12.5
<i>Window</i> assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 5.5.1, 5.5.1A and 5.5.2 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.	
3.	BAL — 19

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

Window assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 6.5.1, 6.5.1A and 6.5.2 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

- (a) Aluminium mesh must not be used in the *window* screens.
- (b) Where leadlight *windows* are installed they must be protected by *non-combustible* shutters or toughened glass.
- (c) Where timber is used, it must be bushfire-resisting timber.

4. BAL — 29

Window assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 7.5.1, 7.5.1A and 7.5.2(a) or (b)(i), (ii), (iii) and (v) of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

- (a) Aluminium mesh must not be used in the *window* screens.

5. BAL — 40

Window assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 8.5.1, 8.5.1A and 8.5.2 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.

6. BAL — FZ

Window assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 9.5.1, 9.5.1A and 9.5.2 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.

EXTERNAL DOORS

(including side-hung external doors such as French doors, panel fold and bi-fold doors, sliding doors and garage doors)

1. BAL — Low

No requirements.

2. BAL — 12.5

Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens, where fitted must comply with clauses 5.5.1, 5.5.1A and 5.5.3, 5.5.4 and 5.5.5 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.

3. BAL — 19

Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 6.5.1, 6.5.1A and 6.5.3, 6.5.4 and 6.5.5 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959, with the following variation:

- (a) Aluminium mesh must not be used in the door screens.

4. BAL — 29

Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 7.5.1, 7.5.1A and 7.5.3(a) or (b) or (c)(i)(A), (C) or (D), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), (vi) and (vii), 7.5.4 and 7.5.5 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959, with the following variations:

- (a) Aluminium mesh must not be used in the door screens.

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

(b) If shutters are used for side-hung or sliding doors, they must be <i>non-combustible</i> .
(c) Side-hung doors must be solid-core with a minimum thickness of 35 mm.
5. BAL — 40
Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 8.5.1, 8.5.1A and 8.5.3(a) or (b)(i)(A), (ii), (iii), (v), (vii) and (viii), 8.5.4 and 8.5.5 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.
6. BAL — FZ
Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 9.5.1, 9.5.1A and 9.5.3, 9.5.4 and 9.5.5 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.
VENTS AND WEEPHOLES
(including vents and weepholes located in <i>external walls</i> and <i>sub-floor spaces</i>)
1. BAL — Low
Vents to sub-floor spaces and weepholes must be fitted with ember guards made from corrosion-resistant steel, bronze or aluminium mesh or perforated sheet with a maximum aperture size of 2 mm.
2. BAL — 12.5
As per the BAL — Low requirements of this table.
3. BAL — 19
As per the BAL — Low requirements of this table with the following variation:
(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for the ember guards.
4. BAL — 29
As per the BAL — 19 requirements of this table.
5. BAL — 40
As per the BAL — 19 requirements of this table.
6. BAL — FZ
As per the BAL — 19 requirements of this table.
ROOFS
(including verandahs and attached carport roofs, eaves linings, fascias, gables)
1. BAL — Low
No requirements.
2. BAL — 12.5
Roofs must comply with clauses 5.6.1, 5.6.2, 5.6.3, 5.6.4 and 5.6.6 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

(a)	Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b)	Any <i>sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.
3. BAL — 19	
Roofs must comply with clauses 6.6.1, 6.6.2, 6.6.3, 6.6.4 and 6.6.6 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:	
(a)	Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b)	Any <i>sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.
(c)	Fascias and bargeboards must be—
(i)	<i>non-combustible</i> ; or
(ii)	bushfire-resisting timber; or
(iii)	a combination of (i) and (ii).
(d)	Timber eaves linings and joining strips in linings, fascias and gables must be of bushfire-resisting timber.
4. BAL — 29	
Roofs must comply with clauses 7.6.1, 7.6.2, 7.6.3, 7.6.4 and 7.6.6 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:	
(a)	Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b)	Any <i>sarking-type material</i> must have a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.
(c)	Fascias and bargeboards must be—
(i)	<i>non-combustible</i> ; or
(ii)	bushfire-resisting timber; or
(iii)	a combination of (i) and (ii).
(d)	Joining strips in linings, fascias and gables must be of bushfire-resisting timber.
(e)	Fibre-reinforced cement or aluminium must not be used for roof sheeting or fascias.
(f)	Aluminium must not be used for eaves linings.
5. BAL — 40	
Roofs must comply with clauses 8.6.1, 8.6.2, 8.6.3, 8.6.4 and 8.6.6 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:	
(a)	Sheet roofs (metal or fibre-cement sheet) must be fully sarked with a <i>sarking-type material</i> having a <i>Flammability Index</i> of not more than 5.
(b)	Joining strips in eaves linings, fascias and gables must be of bushfire-resisting timber.

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

(c)	Fibre-reinforced cement or aluminium must not be used for roof sheeting or fascias.
(d)	Aluminium must not be used for eaves linings.
6. BAL — FZ	
Roofs must comply with clauses 9.6.1, 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:	
(a)	Joining strips in eaves linings, fascias and gables must be of bushfire-resisting timber.
ROOF LIGHTS (including vented Roof lights and skylights)	
1. BAL — Low	
No Requirements.	
2. BAL — 12.5	
Roof lights must comply with clause 5.6.5 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:	
(a)	Aluminium mesh or perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b)	Roof lights and associated shafts through the roof space must be sealed with a <i>non-combustible</i> sleeve or lining.
3. BAL — 19	
Roof lights must comply with clause 6.6.5 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:	
(a)	Aluminium mesh or perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b)	Roof lights and associated shafts through the roof space must be sealed with a <i>non-combustible</i> sleeve or lining.
4. BAL — 29	
Roof lights must comply with clause 7.6.5 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:	
(a)	Aluminium mesh or perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b)	Roof lights and associated shafts through the roof space must be sealed with a <i>non-combustible</i> sleeve or lining.
5. BAL — 40	
Roof lights must comply with clause 8.6.5 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:	
(a)	Roof lights and associated shafts through the roof space must be sealed with a <i>non-combustible</i> sleeve or lining.
6. BAL — FZ	
Roof lights must comply with clause 9.6.3 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.	

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)**ROOF-MOUNTED EVAPORATIVE COOLING UNITS****1. BAL — Low**

No requirements.

2. BAL — 12.5

Evaporative coolers must comply with clause 5.6.5 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

- (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

3. BAL — 19

Evaporative coolers must comply with clause 6.6.5 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

- (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

4. BAL — 29

Evaporative coolers must comply with clause 7.6.5 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

- (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

5. BAL — 40Evaporative coolers must not be installed where the *site* has been classified as BAL — 40.**6. BAL — FZ**Evaporative coolers must not be installed where the *site* has been classified as BAL — FZ.**OTHER ROOF PENETRATIONS****(including roof ventilators, aerals, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors)****1. BAL — Low**

No requirements.

2. BAL — 12.5

Roof penetrations must comply with clause 5.6.5 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

- (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
- (b) All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerals, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of *non-combustible* material.

3. BAL — 19

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

Roof penetrations must comply with clause 6.6.5 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:	
(a)	Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b)	All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of <i>non-combustible</i> material.
4. BAL — 29	
Roof penetrations must comply with clause 7.6.5 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:	
(a)	Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b)	All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of <i>non-combustible</i> material.
5. BAL — 40	
Roof penetrations must comply with clause 8.6.5 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:	
(a)	All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of <i>non-combustible</i> material.
6. BAL — FZ	
Roof penetrations must comply with clause 9.6.3 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:	
(a)	All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of <i>non-combustible</i> material.
GUTTERS AND DOWNPIPES	
1. BAL — Low	
No requirements.	
2. BAL — 12.5	
Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 5.6.7 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.	
3. BAL — 19	
Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 6.6.7 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959.	
4. BAL — 29	
Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 7.6.7 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959.	
5. BAL — 40	
Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 8.6.7 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.	

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

6. BAL — FZ
Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 9.6.5 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.
WATER AND GAS SUPPLY PIPES
1. BAL — Low
No requirements.
2. BAL — 12.5
Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 5.8 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.
3. BAL — 19
Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 6.8 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959.
4. BAL — 29
Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 7.8 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959.
5. BAL — 40
Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 8.8 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.
6. BAL — FZ
Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 9.8 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.
VERANDAHS, DECKS, STEPS, RAMPS AND LANDINGS (including balustrades, handrails or other barriers)
1. BAL — Low
Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with one or a combination of the following:
(a) A concrete slab-on-ground.
(b) A suspended concrete slab.
(c) Any supporting posts or columns must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table for supporting posts, column stumps, piers and poles.
(d) Any supporting walls must comply with the BAL — 12.5 requirements of this table for <i>external walls</i> .
(e) Where sheeted or tongued and grooved solid flooring is used, the flooring system must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table for flooring systems.
(f) Where a timber deck is used—
(i) the gap between the timber decking must not be less than 5 mm; and

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (ii) to facilitate access for extinguishment, the perimeter of the deck must not be enclosed or access to the space beneath the deck impeded; and (iii) The timber decking and flooring must be separated from the remainder of the building in a manner that will not spread the fire into the building.
2. BAL — 12.5
<p>Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table with the following variations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Any supporting posts or columns must comply with the BAL — 12.5 requirements of this table for supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles. (b) Where sheeted or tongued and grooved solid flooring is used, the flooring system must comply with the BAL — 12.5 requirements of this table for flooring systems.
3. BAL — 19
<p>Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table with the following variations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Any supporting posts or columns must comply with the BAL — 19 requirements of this table for supporting posts, column stumps, piers and poles. (b) Any supporting walls must comply with the BAL — 19 requirements of this table for <i>external walls</i>. (c) Where sheeted or tongued and grooved solid flooring is used, the flooring system must comply with the BAL — 19 requirements of this table for flooring systems. (d) Where spaced timber deck flooring is used, bushfire-resisting timber must be used for the decking material.
4. BAL — 29
<p>Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table with the following variations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Any supporting posts or columns must comply with the BAL — 29 requirements of this table for supporting posts, column stumps, piers and poles. (b) Any supporting walls must comply with the BAL — 29 requirements of this table for <i>external walls</i>. (c) Where sheeted or tongued and grooved solid flooring is used, the flooring system must comply with the BAL — 29 requirements of this table for flooring system. (d) Where spaced timber deck flooring is used, bushfire-resisting timber must be used for the decking material. (e) Balustrades and handrails must be <i>non-combustible</i>, or if timber is used, it must be bushfire-resisting timber.
5. BAL — 40

SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES (Continued)

Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

- (a) Balustrades and handrails must be *non-combustible*.

6. BAL — FZ

Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

- (a) Balustrades and handrails must be *non-combustible*.

Add SA Part G7 as follows:

SA PART G7 ACCESS FOR MAINTENANCE**OBJECTIVE****SA G07**

The *Objectives* of this Part are—

- (a) to safeguard people from injury while cleaning *windows*; and
- (b) to safeguard people from injury or illness resulting from the creation of hazardous spaces between buildings.

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS**SA GF7.1**

A building is to provide people with safe conditions for carrying out *window* cleaning operations.

SA GF7.2

The space between buildings must not allow hazardous conditions to arise due to accumulation of rubbish that cannot readily be removed.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

SA GP7.1

Where any part of a *window* in a building is more than 5.5 m above ground level, provision must be made for safe access to the external surface of the *window* for minor maintenance and cleaning.

SA GP7.2

The space between buildings must be sufficient to allow access for inspection and maintenance, to avoid hazardous conditions arising due to accumulation of rubbish that could—

- (a) bridge termite barriers; or
- (b) harbour vermin; or
- (c) create a *fire hazard*.

SA G7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements SA GP7.1 and SA GP7.2 are satisfied by complying with SA G7.1 to SA G7.3.

SA G7.1 Application of Part

The following provisions apply to Class 2 to 9 buildings.

SA G7.2 Access for window cleaning

Where any part of a *window* in a building is more than 5.5 m above ground level, access to the external surface of the *window* for minor maintenance and cleaning must be provided. Any of the following methods are acceptable—

- (a) by means of a moveable gantry; or
- (b) by means of reversible pivoting sashes, each of which has catches that secure the sash in either the normal or reversed position and give visual indication that the *window* is secure, provided that where a *window* sill is less than 900 mm above floor level, safety anchorages are provided; or
- (c) by means of safety harness, having all anchorages—
 - (i) designed and installed in accordance with AS/NZS 1891.4; and
 - (ii) constructed of approved corrosion resistant metal; or
- (d) by means of opening sashes, in which case the maximum reach to the farthest part of the *window* must not exceed 500 mm upwards or 1 m sideways or downwards and provided that where the *window* sill is less than 900 mm above floor level, safety anchorages are provided.

SA G7.3 Access for inspection and maintenance between buildings

Every part of an *external wall* of a building must be not less than 600 mm from—

- (a) the *external wall* of any other building on the same allotment, unless the two buildings are abutting; or
- (b) any boundary of the allotment, unless that wall is on or abutting that boundary, unless the space between external columns is not infilled.

Add SA Part G8 as follows:

SA PART G8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**OBJECTIVE****SA G08**

The *Objective* of this Part is to safeguard people from injury resulting from hazardous conditions being created by building attachments.

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT**SA GF8.1**

A building is to be provided with safeguards to prevent a building attachment—

- (a) collapsing; and
- (b) creating hazardous conditions by its water run-off; and
- (c) affecting adjacent road safety conditions by its projection; and
- (d) creating a *fire hazard* above a street.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT**SA GP8.1**

An attachment to a building must incorporate features that will—

- (a) protect it against corrosion; and
- (b) collect and discharge its rainwater run-off safely; and
- (c) prevent its projection affecting adjacent road safety conditions or pedestrian traffic; and

- (d) provide resistance to the spread of fire if it overhangs a street boundary, to a degree necessary to avoid creating hazardous conditions that may cause injury to people passing below or driving past.

SA G8.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirement SA GP8.1 is satisfied by complying with SA G8.1 and SA G8.2.

SA G8.1 Application of Part

The following provisions apply to Class 2 to 9 buildings.

SA G8.2 Attachments to buildings

- (a) An attachment to a building that is in the nature of a balcony or awning, bridge, gangway, hoarding or trade sign, sky sign, mast, flagpole, tower, aerial or antenna, lantern, cathead, crane, chimney, flue or duct, or an installation for cleaning and maintenance access must—
 - (i) have all metal parts of corrosion resistant metal, or other metal suitably protected;
 - (ii) not overhang any street boundary at a height less than 2.5 m above the footpath, or 4 m above the roadway; and
 - (iii) be provided with drainage to prevent rainwater or condensate falling onto or running across the footpath, unless either it is a retractable awning in the nature of a sun blind, or unless the total catchment area for run-off is less than 1.5 m².
- (b) A balcony or awning that overhangs a street boundary—
 - (i) must not extend closer than 450 mm to the kerb of the roadway; and
 - (ii) must be constructed of *non-combustible* or fire-retardant materials throughout, except that timber battens may be used to support the soffit lining.

SECTION H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

SA PART H2 BULK GRAIN STORAGE FACILITIES

SA H2.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to certain Class 7 buildings erected for commercial bulk handling and storage of granular materials such as grain, ore, or the like, where only a small number of occupants are present at one time.

SA H2.2 Concessions for bulk grain storage facilities

Compliance with Minister's Specification SA H2.2 — "Construction of bulk grain storage facilities" is deemed-to-satisfy the *Performance Requirements* of **Sections C, D, E and F**, as applicable, for cell type silos and large grain storage and handling sheds.

SA PART H3 FARM BUILDINGS

SA H3.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to Class 7 or 8 buildings used for certain farming purposes.

SA H3.2 Concessions and additions for farm buildings

Class 7 and 8 farm buildings complying with Minister's Specification SA H3.2 — 'Concessions and additional requirements for farm buildings' and all other relevant BCA *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* not varied by the Minister's Specification are deemed to satisfy the *Performance Requirements* of the BCA.

SECTION I MAINTENANCE

PART I1 EQUIPMENT AND SAFETY INSTALLATIONS

Delete I1.1 and insert SA I1.1 as follows:

SA I1.1 Safety installations

Safety measures must—

- (a) perform to a standard not less than the standard they were originally required to achieve; and
- (b) for those safety measures listed in **Tables I1.1 to I1.13**, perform to a standard not less than that determined using the corresponding BCA provisions as required at installation; and
- (c) safety measures listed in **Tables I1.1 to I1.11 and I1.13** are 'essential safety provisions' that must be maintained in accordance with regulation 76 of the Development Regulations 1993; and
- (d) Compliance with Minister's Specification SA 76 is deemed-to-satisfy (a), (b) and (c).

Delete I1.2 and insert SA I1.2 as follows:

SA I1.2 Mechanical ventilation and hot water, warm water and cooling water systems

Mechanical ventilation and hot water, warm water and cooling water systems in a building other than a system only serving a single *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part must be maintained in accordance with item 3.6(f) of Minister's Specification SA 76.

SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Insert SA JP4 as follows:

Performance Requirement

SA JP4

Heating for a hot water supply system that only serves a single *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 building must, to the degree necessary, obtain energy from a source that has a greenhouse gas emission profile not exceeding 300 kilograms of carbon dioxide equivalent per gigajoule of heated water (300 kgCO₂-e/GJ).

Insert SA JV4 after SA JP4 as follows:

Verification Method

SA JV4

- (a) Compliance with Performance Requirement **SA JP4** for a heater in a hot water supply system is verified when the annual greenhouse gas intensity of the water heater does not exceed 300 g CO₂-e/MJ of thermal energy load determined in accordance with AS/NZS 4234.
- (b) The greenhouse gas intensity of the water heater in (a) is the sum of the annual greenhouse gas emissions from each energy source in g CO₂-e divided by the annual thermal energy load of the water heater.
- (c) The annual greenhouse gas emission from each energy source in (b) is the product of—
 - (i) the annual amount of energy consumed from that energy source; and
 - (ii) the emission factor of—
 - (A) if the energy source is electricity, 272 g CO₂-e/MJ; or
 - (B) if the energy source is liquefied petroleum gas, 65 g CO₂-e/MJ; or
 - (C) if the energy source is natural gas, 61 g CO₂-e/MJ; or
 - (D) if the energy source is wood or biomass, 4 g CO₂-e/MJ.

SA PART J1 BUILDING FABRIC

After J1.3(d) insert SA J1.3(e) as follows:

SA J1.3 Roof and ceiling construction

- (e) If a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building, or part of a building—

- (i) is constructed in *climate zone* 4 or 5; and
- (ii) has a roof pitch of not more than 5 degrees; and
- (iii) has a *conditioned space*,

the roofing material must have an upper surface solar absorptance value of not more than 0.4.

SA PART J7 HOT WATER SUPPLY AND SWIMMING POOL AND SPA POOL PLANT

After J7.0(b) insert SA J7.0(c) as follows:

SA J7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (c) *Performance Requirement SA JP4* is satisfied by complying with **SA J7.5**.

Delete J7.2 and insert SA J7.2 as follows:

SA J7.2 Hot water supply

The design and installation of heated water services in South Australia is regulated by Directions Issued by the South Australian Water Corporation pursuant to Regulation 17 of the Waterworks Regulations 1996.

After J7.4 insert SA J7.5 as follows:

SA J7.5 Complying heated water services

A water heater in a hot water supply system that only serves a single Class 2 *sole-occupancy unit* must be one of the following:

- (a) An electric heated water service with a **rated hot water delivery**, if applicable, of 700 litres or less.
- (b) A natural gas or LPG heated water service (instantaneous, continuous flow or storage) that is rated at not less than 2.5 stars in accordance with AS 4552, and a tank volume, if applicable, of 700 litres or less.
- (c) A solar heated water service (electric, natural gas or LPG boosted) or heat pump heated water service (air source or solar boosted), with a total tank volume of 700 litres or less, that is eligible for any number of *Small-scale Technology Certificates*.
- (d) A wood combustion heated water service, with no additional heating mechanisms, with a total tank volume of 700 litres or less.
- (e) A wood combustion boosted solar heated water service, with no additional heating mechanisms, with a total tank volume of 700 litres or less.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Development Act 1993, the Development Regulations 2008 and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical

requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Abattoirs

1.1 Administering agency:

Department of Health

Relevant legislation:

Food Act 2001

Food Regulations 2002

2. Accommodation

2.1 Administering agency:

Department for Families and Communities

Relevant legislation:

Supported Residential Facilities Act 1992

Supported Residential Facilities Regulations 2009

3. Asbestos Removal

3.1 Administering agency:

SafeWork SA, Department of the Premier and Cabinet

Relevant legislation:

Occupational Health, Safety and Welfare Act 1986

Occupational Health, Safety and Welfare Regulations 1995

4. Children's Services

4.1 Administering agency:

Department of Education and Children's Services

Relevant legislation:

Children's Services Act 1985

Children's Services (Child Care Centre) Regulations 1998

5. Crown Land

5.1 Administering agency:

Department of Environment and Natural Resources

Relevant legislation:

Crown Land Management Act 2009

Crown Land Management Regulations 2010

6. Dangerous Goods

6.1 Administering agency:

Department of Health

Relevant legislation:

Controlled Substances Act 1984

Controlled Substances (Pesticides) Regulations 2003

Controlled Substances (Poisons) Regulations 1996

6.2 Administering agency:

Safework SA, Department of the Premier and Cabinet

Relevant legislation:

Dangerous Substances Act 1979

Dangerous Substances Regulations 2002

Explosives Act 1936

Explosives Regulations 1996

Explosives (Fireworks) Regulations 2001

Explosives (Security Sensitive Substances) Regulations 2006

7. Electrical Installations

7.1 Administering agency:

Office of the Technical Regulator, Department of Transport, Energy and Infrastructure

Relevant legislation:

Electricity Act 1996

Electricity (General) Regulations 1997

8. Encroachments

8.1 Administering agency:

Attorney-General's Department

Relevant legislation:

Encroachments Act 1944

9. Fences

9.1 Administering agency:

Attorney-General's Department

Relevant legislation:

Fences Act 1975

Fences Regulations 2003

10. Fire Prevention in Existing Buildings

10.1 Administering agency:

Department of Planning and Local Government

Relevant legislation:

Development Act 1993

Development Regulations 2008

10.2 Administering agency:

SA Fire and Emergency Services Commission

Relevant legislation:

Fire and Emergency Services Act 2005

Fire and Emergency Services Regulations 2005

11. Food Premises

11.1 Administering agency:

Department of Health

Relevant legislation:

Food Act 2001

Food Regulations 2002

12. Gas Installations

12.1 Administering agency:

Office of the Technical Regulator, Department of Transport, Energy and Infrastructure

Relevant legislation:

Gas Act 1997

Gas Regulations 1997

13. Historic Buildings

13.1 Administering agency:

Department of Environment and Natural Resources

Relevant legislation:

Heritage Places Act 1993

Heritage Places Regulations 2005

14. Hospitals, Nursing Homes and Health Care Buildings

14.1 Administering agency:

Department of Health

Relevant legislation:

Health Care Act 2008

Health Care Regulations 2008

15. Housing

15.1 Administering agency:

Department for Families and Communities

Relevant legislation:

Housing Improvement Act 1940

Housing Improvement (Standards) Regulations 2007

16. Licensed Premises

16.1 Administering agency:

Office of Liquor and Gambling Commissioner, Attorney-General's Department

Relevant legislation:

Liquor Licensing Act 1997

Liquor Licensing (General) Regulations 1997

17. Lift Installations

17.1 Administering agency:

Safework SA, Department of the Premier and Cabinet

Relevant legislation:

Occupational Health, Safety and Welfare Act 1986

Occupational Health, Safety and Welfare Regulations 1995

18. Occupational Health and Safety

18.1 Administering agency:

SafeWork SA, Department of the Premier and Cabinet

Relevant legislation:

Occupational Health, Safety and Welfare Act 1986

Occupational Health, Safety and Welfare Regulations 1995

19. Pharmacies

19.1 Administering agency:

Department of Health

Relevant legislation:

Health Practitioner Regulation National Law (South Australia) Act 2010

Health Practitioner Regulation National Law (South Australia) Regulations 2010

20. Radiation Safety

20.1 Administering agency:

Environment Protection Authority

Relevant legislation:

Radiation Protection and Control Act 1982

Radiation Protection and Control (Ionising Radiation) Regulations 2000

21. Sanitary Plumbing, Water Supply and Sewerage

21.1 Administering agency:

South Australian Water Corporation

Relevant legislation:

Sewerage Act 1929

Sewerage Regulations 1996

Waterworks Act 1932

Waterworks Regulations 1996

22. School (non-government)

22.1 Administering agency:

Department of Education and Children's Services

Relevant legislation:

Education Act 1972

Education Regulations 1997

23. Septic Tank and Grey Water Installations

23.1 Administering agency:

Department of Health

Relevant legislation:

Public and Environmental Health Act 1987

Public and Environmental Health (Waste Control) Regulations 2010

24. Smoking Restrictions

24.1 Administering agency:

Department of Health

Relevant legislation:

Tobacco Products Regulation Act 1997

Tobacco Products Regulations 2004

25. Subdivision of Property

25.1 Administering agency:

Land Services Group, Department for Transport, Energy and Infrastructure

Relevant legislation:

Community Titles Act 1996

Community Titles Regulations 1996

Real Property Act 1886

Real Property Regulations 2009

Strata Titles Act 1988

Strata Titles Regulations 2003

26. Waste management and environment protection

26.1 Administering agency:

Environment Protection Authority

Relevant legislation:

Environment Protection Act 1993

Environment Protection Regulations 2009

26.2 Administering agency:

South Australian Water Corporation

Relevant legislation:

Sewerage Act 1929

Sewerage Regulations 1996

APPENDIX

TASMANIA

INTRODUCTION

The Tasmania BCA Appendix includes variations from the requirements of the 2010 edition of the Building Code of Australia (BCA) and additional requirements resulting from the consolidation in Tasmania of all building-related regulations into the BCA.

The variations from the requirements of the BCA apply to the construction or alteration of all buildings in Tasmania and the extra requirements apply to all workplaces and special-use buildings.

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX TASMANIA

Tasmania

A GENERAL PROVISIONS

- Tas A1.1 Definitions
- Tas Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted By Reference

E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

- Tas EO1 Objectives
- Tas EF1.2 Functional Statements
- Tas EP1.7 Performance Requirements
- Tas E1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Tas E1.101 Fire detection and alarm system

F HEALTH AND AMENITY

- Tas Table F2.3 Sanitary Facilities in Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings
- Tas F2.101 Non-flushed Urinals
- Tas F2.102 Installation of Closet Fixtures
- Tas F4.101 Fixed Natural Ventilation

G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

TAS PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

- Tas GO1 Objectives
- Tas GF1.4 to GF1.6 Functional Statements
- Tas GP1.5 to GP1.9 Performance Requirements
- Tas G1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Tas G1.1 Swimming Pools

TAS PART G2 HEATING APPLIANCES, FIREPLACES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES

- Tas G02 Objective
- Tas GF2.1 Functional Statement
- Tas GP2.1 Performance Requirement
- Tas G2.2 Installation of appliances

TAS PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS

- Tas G05 Objective
- Tas GF5.1 Functional Statement
- Tas GP5.1 Performance Requirement
- Tas G5.3 Vehicular access

Tas G5.4 Water supply

TAS PART G101 PROJECTIONS OVER WAYS

Tas G101.1 Construction and location of projections over ways

Tas G101.2 Protection of Ways

H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

Tas Part H101 - Tas Part H121 Objectives

TAS PART H101 WORKPLACES

Tas H101.1 Application of Part

Tas H101.2 Floor area

Tas H101.3 Floor surfaces

Tas H101.4 Floor drainage

Tas H101.5 Floor covering

Tas H101.6 Overhead clearance

Tas H101.7 Lighting

Tas H101.8 Ventilation

Tas H101.9 Toilet facilities

Tas H101.10 Hand washing facilities

Tas H101.11 Shower facilities

Tas H101.12 Change rooms

Tas H101.13 Dining rooms

Tas H101.14 Rest rooms

Tas H101.15 First aid rooms and health centres

Tas H101.16 Doors

TAS PART H102 FOOD PREMISES

Tas H102 O1 Objective

Tas H102 F1 Functional Statement

Tas H102 P1 to H102 P12 Performance Requirements

Tas H102.0 Application of Part

Tas H102.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Tas H102.2 General Requirements

Tas H102.3 Pests and contaminants

Tas H102.4 Drains and Pipes

Tas H102.5 Offensive material and trade waste

Tas H102.6 Ventilation

Tas H102.7 Lighting

Tas H102.8 Floors, walls and ceilings

Tas H102.9 Separation of work place

Tas H102.10 Washbasins

Tas H102.11 Sinks

Tas H102.12 Design, construction and installation of fixtures, fittings and equipment

Tas H102.13 Storage of materials and equipment

Tas H102.14 Food store

Tas H102.15 Meat Premises

Tas H102.16 Dairy produce

Tas H102.17 Refrigerated and cooling chambers

TAS PART H103 DINING ROOMS AND BAR ROOMS

Tas H103.1 Application of Part

Tas H103.2 Sanitary facilities

Tas H103.3 Separation from other areas

TAS PART H104 * * * * *

TAS PART H105 * * * * *

TAS PART H106 MEAT PREMISES

Tas H106.1 Application of Part

Tas H106.2 Premises Processing Animals and Meat

TAS PART H107 FARM DAIRY PREMISES

Tas H107.1 Application of this Part

Tas H107.2 Milking Sheds and Holding Yards

Tas H107.3 Milk Receiving Area and Milk Storage Room

Tas H107.4 Water supply

TAS PART H108 PHARMACIES

Tas H108.1 Application of Part

Tas H108.2 Definition

Tas H108.3 Pharmacy premises

Tas H108.4 Dispensary

Tas H108.5 Security of dispensary

TAS PART H109 HEALTH SERVICES ESTABLISHMENTS

Tas H109.1 Application of Part

Tas H109.2 Design and construction of health services establishments

TAS PART H110 PREMISES USED FOR ACTIVITIES INVOLVING SKIN PENETRATION

Tas H110.1 Application of Part

Tas H110.2 Sanitary facilities

Tas H110.3 Washbasins

TAS PART H111 DENTAL SURGERIES AND CHIROPRACTORS' PREMISES

Tas H111.1 Application of Part

Tas H111.2 Waiting room

Tas H111.3 Floor, walls and ceiling

Tas H111.4 Disposal of liquid wastes

TAS PART H112 MORTUARIES

Tas H112.1 Application of Part

- Tas H112.2 Layout of mortuary
- Tas H112.3 Construction of body preparation room
- Tas H112.4 Water supply and sewerage

TAS PART H113 FOUNDRIES

- Tas H113.1 Application of Part
- Tas H113.2 General
- Tas H113.3 Cupola charging platform
- Tas H113.4 Deep moulds and pits
- Tas H113.5 Pot furnaces

TAS PART H114 PREMISES FOR MANUFACTURE OR PROCESSING OF GLASS REINFORCED PLASTICS

- Tas H114.1 Application of Part
- Tas H114.2 Separation from other buildings
- Tas H114.3 Rise in storeys
- Tas H114.4 Maximum floor areas
- Tas H114.5 Required exits
- Tas H114.6 Hand laminating and spray depositing
- Tas H114.7 Ventilation
- Tas H114.8 Smoke and heat roof vents

TAS PART H115 PREMISES FOR PRODUCTION OR PROCESSING OF ISOCYANATES

- Tas H115.1 Application of Part
- Tas H115.2 Areas of work places
- Tas H115.3 Separation from other areas and buildings
- Tas H115.4 Rise in storeys
- Tas H115.5 Maximum floor areas
- Tas H115.6 Required exits
- Tas H115.7 Bulk stores for polyols and isocyanates
- Tas H115.8 Curing room

TAS PART H116 PREMISES FOR ELECTRO-PLATING ELECTRO-POLISHING, ANODISING OR ETCHING

- Tas H116.1 Application of Part
- Tas H116.2 Floors
- Tas H116.3 Height of plating area
- Tas H116.4 Air space
- Tas H116.5 Ceiling construction

TAS PART H117 PREMISES FOR LEAD PROCESSING

- Tas H117.1 Application of Part
- Tas H117.2 Floors
- Tas H117.3 Height of lead processing areas
- Tas H117.4 Air space and floor space
- Tas H117.5 Interior of lead processing areas
- Tas H117.6 Dust collection

Tas H117.7 Isolation of certain processes
Tas H117.8 Drying room shelves
Tas H117.9 Washing facilities
Tas H117.10 Change rooms

TAS PART H118 BOOTHS FOR SPRAY PAINTING OR SPRAY COATING

Tas H118.1 Application of Part
Tas H118.2 Design and construction of booths

TAS PART H119 ELECTRICITY DISTRIBUTION SUBSTATIONS

Tas H119.1 Application of Part
Tas H119.2 Building-type substations

TAS PART H120 PREMISES FOR STORAGE OF DANGEROUS GOODS

Tas H120.1 Application of Part
Tas H120.2 Interpretation
Tas H120.3 Class of dangerous goods
Tas H120.4 Premises for storage of dangerous goods
Tas H120.5 Workrooms
Tas H120.6 Exits
Tas H120.7 Explosion vents
Tas H120.8 Spill Collection Bunds
Tas H120.9 Electrical equipment

TAS PART H121 HAIRDRESSERS' PREMISES

Tas H121.1 Application of Part
Tas H121.2 Size of operating section
Tas H121.3 Premises in a residence
Tas H121.4 Sanitary facilities

TAS PART H122 EARLY CHILDHOOD CENTRES AND SCHOOL AGE CARE FACILITIES

Tas H122 O1 Objective
Tas H122 F1 Functional Statement
Tas H122 P1 to H122 P3 Performance Requirements
Tas H122.0 Application of Part
Tas H122.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

TAS PART H123 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

Tas H123 O1 Objective
Tas H123 F1 Functional Statement
Tas H123 P1 to H123 P14 Performance Requirements
Tas H123.0 Application of Part
Tas H123.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
Tas H123.2 Structure
Tas H123.3 Fire resisting material
Tas H123.4 Access
Tas H123.5 Exits and entrances
Tas H123.6 Barriers

Tas H123.7 Emergency lighting
Tas H123.8 Exit signs
Tas H123.9 Fire fighting equipment
Tas H123.10 Sanitary facilities
Tas H123.11 Lighting
Tas H123.12 Ventilation
Tas H123.13 Electrical
Tas H123.14 Heating appliances
Tas H123.15 Seating

TAS PART H124 PREMISES WHERE WORK IS UNDERTAKEN ON GAS-FUELLED VEHICLES

Tas H124.1 Application of Part
Tas H124.2 Working Areas

I MAINTENANCE

TAS PART I2 ENERGY EFFICIENCY INSTALLATIONS

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

TAS SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1 INTERPRETATION

Tas A1.1 Definitions

Insert definition for *centre-based care class 4 facility* as follows:

Centre-based care class 4 facility is a facility as defined in Centre Based Care Class 4 Standards.

Insert definition for *centre-based care class 5 facility* as follows:

Centre-based care class 5 facility is a facility as defined in Centre Based Care Class 5 Standards.

Vary the definition for *early childhood centre* as follows:

Early childhood centre means any premises or part thereof providing or intending to provide a centre-based education and care service within the meaning of the Education and Care Services National Law Act 2010 (Vic), the Education and Care Services National Regulations and centre-based services that are licensed or approved under State and Territory children's services law, but excludes—

- (a) education and care primarily provided to school aged children in outside school hours settings; and
- (b) services licensed as *centre based care class 4* under the Child Care Act 2001 (Tas).

Insert definition for *public* as follows:

Public includes any person working in an enclosed public place.

Insert definition for *School age care facility* as follows:

School age care facility is a facility providing care for children (primarily) 5 years or older in an outside of school hours setting, either approved or licenced under Education and Care Services National Law Act 2011 (Tas) or the Child Care Act 2001 (Tas).

Insert definition for *temporary structure* as follows:

Temporary structure includes any—

- (a) booth, tent or other temporary enclosure, whether or not part of the booth, tent or enclosure is permanent; or
- (b) temporary seating structure; or
- (c) other structure prescribed under the *Building Act 2000*.

Tas Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Insert in Table 1 the following:

TAS Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
AS 1187	1996	Refrigerated bulk milk tanks	Tas H107.3

TAS Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS (Continued)

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
AS/NZS 1596	2008	The storage and handling of LP Gas	Tas H120.4
AS 1657	1992	Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders — Design, construction and installation	Tas H113.3
AS/NZS 1668		The use of ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings	
Part 1	1998	Fire and smoke control in multi-compartment buildings	Tas H102.6
AS 1668		The use of mechanical ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings	
Part 2	1991	Mechanical ventilation for acceptable indoor-air quality	Tas H102.6
AS/NZS 1680		Interior lighting	Tas H101.7, Tas H102.7
Part 2.4	1997	Industrial tasks and processes Amdt 1	
Part 2.5	1997	Hospitals and medical tasks	
AS 1680		Interior lighting	Tas H101.7 Tas H102.7
Part 1	1990	General principles and recommendations Amdt 1	
Part 2.1	1993	Circulation spaces and other general areas	
Part 2.2	1994	Office and screen based tasks	
Part 2.3	1994	Education and training facilities	
AS 1940	2004	The storage and handling of flammable and combustible liquids	Tas H120.4
		Amdt 1	
		Amdt 2	
AS 2022	2003	Anhydrous ammonia — storage and handling.	Tas H120.4
		Amdt 1	

TAS Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS (Continued)

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
AS 2381		Electrical equipment for explosive atmospheres — Selection, installation and maintenance	Tas H120.9
Part 1	2005	General requirements Amdt 1 Amdt 2 Amdt 3	
Part 2	2006	Flameproof enclosure Amdt 1 Amdt 1	
Part 6	1993	Increased safety	
Part 7	1989	Intrinsic safety	
AS 2430		Classification of hazardous areas	Tas H120.5
Part 1	1987	Explosive gas atmospheres	
AS 2507	1998	The storage and handling of pesticides	Tas H120.4
AS 2658	2003	LP Gas - Portable and mobile appliances	Tas H123.14
AS 2714	2008	The storage and handling of organic peroxides	Tas H120.4
AS 2746	2008	Working areas for gas fuelled vehicles	Tas 124.2
AS/NZS 2927	2001	The storage and handling of liquefied chlorine gas Amdt 1	Tas H120.4
AS/NZS 3002	2002	Electrical installations — shows and carnivals	Tas H123.13
AS/NZS 3760	2001	In-service safety inspection and testing of electrical equipment	Tas H123.13
AS 3780	2008	Storage and handling of corrosive substances Amdt 1	Tas H120.4
AS/NZS 4013	1999	Domestic solid fuel burning appliances — Method for determination of flue gas emission	Tas G2.2, Tas H123.14

TAS Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS (Continued)

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
AS/NZS 4114		Spray painting booths, designated spray painting areas, and paint mixing rooms	
Part 1	2003	Design, construction and testing	Tas H118.2
AS 4464	1997	Hygienic production of game meat for human consumption	Tas H106.2
AS 4465	2001	Construction of premises and hygienic production of poultry meat for human consumption	Tas H106.2
AS 4466	1997	Hygienic production of rabbit meat for human consumption	Tas H106.2
AS 4674	2004	Design, construction and fit-out of food premises (Clauses 4.2 and 4.3)	Tas H102.12
AS 4696	2002	Hygienic production and transportation of meat and meat products for human consumption	Tas H106.2
AS 5008	2001	Hygienic rendering of animal products	Tas H106.2
AS 5010	2001	Hygienic production of ratite (emu/ostrich) meat for human consumption	Tas H106.2
AS 5011	2001	Hygienic production of natural casings for human consumption	Tas H106.2
AS 5601	2004	Gas Installations	Tas H120.4
Aurora Energy's Distribution Substation Design and Construction Standard			Tas H119.1, Tas H119.2
BCA 2009	May 2009	Building Code of Australia	Tas Part I2, Tas Section J
Child Care Act (Tas)	2001		Tas A1.1, Tas H122.0
Education and Care Services National Law Act (Tas)	2011		Tas A1.1, Tas H122.0
Health Services Establishment Act (Tas)	2006		Tas H109.1

TAS Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS (Continued)

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
Early Childhood Centre and School Age Care Facilities Code	2012		Tas H122.0, Tas H122.1
Health Services Establishments Code	2012		Tas H109.2
Centre Based Care Class 4 Standards	2011		Tas A1.1
Centre Based Care Class 5 Standards	2011		Tas A1.1
Export Control (Processes Food) Orders			Tas H102.16
Tasmania Code of Practice Hygienic Production of Pet Food			Tas H106.2
Australian Road Research Board	2009	Unsealed Road Manual - Guidelines to good practice 3 rd Edition	Tas G5.3
Disability Discrimination Act (Cwth)	1992		Tas DP10
Disability (Access to Premises – Buildings) Standards (Cwth)	2010		Tas D3.13

SECTION E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

PART E1 FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

After EO1(c) insert *Objective* Tas EO1(d) as follows:

OBJECTIVES

Tas EO1

(d) limit property and environmental damage caused by a fire.

After EF1.1 insert *Functional Statement* Tas EF1.2 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS

Tas EF1.2

A building is to be provided with a system to alert the *fire brigade* of a fire in the building.

After EP1.6 insert *Performance Requirement* Tas EP1.7 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas EP1.7

An *automatic* fire detection system must be installed to the degree necessary to alert the *fire brigade* of fire so that fire fighting operations may be undertaken at the earliest possible time appropriate to—

- (a) the building functions and use; and
- (b) the *fire hazard*; and
- (c) the height of the building; and
- (d) the building *floor area*.

Limitation:

Tas EO1(d), Tas EF1.2 and Tas EP1.7 only applies to:

- (a) a Class 5 building or Class 6 building having an aggregate *floor area* of more than 1000 m²; and
- (b) a Class 7 building having a *floor area* of more than 1000 m² in which furniture is stored; and
- (c) a Class 8 building which is a special *fire hazard* building and in which more than 25 persons are employed; and
- (d) a Class 9b building which is a *school* or *early childhood centre* or a *creche* which—
 - (A) is of more than 1 *storey*; or
 - (B) has a *storey* with a *floor area* more than 500 m²; and
- (e) a Class 9b building which is a *theatre*.

Delete E1.0 and insert Tas E1.0 as follows:

Tas E1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements EP1.1 to EP 1.6 and **Tas EP1.7** are satisfied by complying with E1.1 to E1.10 and **Tas E1.101**.

After E1.10 insert Tas E1.101 as follows:

Tas E1.101 Fire detection and alarm system

An *automatic* fire detection and alarm system must comply with **Clauses 4 and 7 of Specification E2.2a**.

SECTION F HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F2 SANITARY FACILITIES

Tas Table F2.3 Sanitary Facilities in Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 Buildings

Delete the Note in Table F2.3 alongside *early childhood centres* and replace it with the following:

Note: If the centre accommodates children under 4 years of age the facilities for use by those children must be—

- (a) junior pans; and
- (b) wash basins with a rim height not exceeding 600 mm.

After F2.8 insert Tas F2.101 as follows:

Tas F2.101 Non-flushed Urinals

Non-flushed urinals not connected to a sewerage system must comply with **Tas F2.102**.

After Tas F2.101 insert Tas F2.102 as follows:

Tas F2.102 Installation of Closet Fixtures

- (a) If a sufficient sewerage system is not available, an authorised alternative means of disposal of sewage, may be installed.
- (b) If sanitary facilities are not water-flushed, the following provisions apply:
 - (i) A pit latrine, an incinerating toilet, a chemical toilet, a removable pan or a non-flushing urinal must not be within 2 m of a building containing habitable rooms.
 - (ii) The floor on which a removable pan is placed must be impervious.
 - (iii) A room containing a composting toilet must be separated from habitable rooms by way of a permanently ventilated air lock (which may be a circulation space).
 - (iv) The minimum ventilation *required* under (iii) shall be the greater of—
 - (A) 8000 mm²; or
 - (B) 1/500th of the *floor area* of the circulation space.
 - (v) Access for maintenance or removal of waste from a composting toilet must be by way of an access door which opens directly to the outside of the building.

PART F4 LIGHT AND VENTILATION

After F4.12 insert Tas F4.101 as follows:

Tas F4.101 Fixed Natural Ventilation

- (a) Except if mechanical ventilation or air-conditioning is provided, in rooms and areas listed in **Tas Table F4.101**, a fixed opening, of aggregate size not less than that shown in the Table, must be provided in addition to any adjustable opening.

TAS TABLE F4.101 FIXED NATURAL VENTILATION

Building Class	Room to be ventilated	Size of fixed opening/floor area
2, 3 and 4	(i) Common stairways	1/500
	(ii) Communal laundries	1/500
7	Rooms for storage of polluting or noxious substances	1/350
8	All rooms	1/500*
9a	Store rooms	1/500
9b	(i) Assembly halls in schools	1/250
	(ii) Workshops in schools	1/250
Other than Class 2, 4	(i) Pantries for food preparation rooms	1/500
	(ii) Washrooms	1/500*
	(iii) Sanitary compartments	1/350*
	(iv) Locker, meal and change rooms	1/500*
	(v) Boiler rooms	1/500*
	(vi) Plant, machinery rooms	1/250*
	(vii) Electrical switchboard rooms	1/250*
	(viii) Battery rooms (other than lead acid)	1/500*

Note: Not less than half of the fixed natural ventilation must be provided as high in the room as possible but not less than 2 m above the floor.

- (b) Fixed natural ventilation may be provided by means of—
- (i) openings in walls, clear of obstructions other than louvres or grilles; or
 - (ii) ceiling ventilators, including skylights and roof ventilators.
- (c) Where a fixed ventilation opening is associated with a duct, that duct must have a clear open way at least twice the *required* area of the opening.
- (d) Openings for fixed natural ventilation must be placed so as to let air out and, if the air entering by or around doors or by other openings is insufficient for adequate ventilation, additional openings for the entry of air must be provided.

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

After GO1(e) insert *Objective* Tas GO1(f), (g) and (h) as follows:

OBJECTIVES

Tas GO1(f)

safeguard people from illness or injury arising from the use of a *swimming pool*.

Tas GO1(g)

safeguard people from illness or injury when using a way.

Tas GO1(h)

protect a way.

After GF1.3 insert *Functional Statements* Tas GF1.4, Tas GF1.5 and Tas GF1.6 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS

Tas GF1.4

Swimming pools must provide for the health and safety of swimmers and others.

Tas GF1.5

Projections over ways must not pose a danger to persons using the way nor to adjoining buildings.

Tas GF1.6

Buildings located adjacent to a way must not unduly affect the integrity of the way.

After GP1.4 insert *Performance Requirements* Tas GP1.5 to Tas GP1.9 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas GP1.5

Swimming pools must be suitable and safe to use and be provided with appropriate facilities.

Tas GP1.6

Projections over ways must be constructed and located to provide safe passage along the way and reduce the spread of fire and the potential for collapse.

Tas GP1.7

Roofs of buildings and attachments to buildings must not allow stormwater to reach the way except by way of a drain.

Tas GP1.8

Excavations must be protected to prevent any part of a way from subsiding into them.

Tas GP1.9

Footings of a building must not project on to a way except if they are at sufficient depth.

Limitation

Tas GP1.5 does not apply to a *swimming pool* associated with a Class 2 building.

Delete G1.0(b) and insert Tas G1.0(b) as follows:

Tas G1.0(b) Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements GP1.2 to GP1.4 and Tas GP1.5 to Tas GP1.9 are satisfied by complying with G1.1 and G1.2.

After G1.1(e) insert Tas G1.1(f) to (j) as follows:

Tas G1.1 Swimming Pools

- (f) *Swimming pools* for the use of the public, a club, or an association, or in connection with Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 buildings must—
- (i) be constructed of durable materials with smooth finishes; and
 - (ii) have sides vertical; and
 - (iii) in that part of the pool where the water depth is not more than 1.5 m, have the bottom or floor slope not steeper than 1 vertical to 15 horizontal; and

- (iv) have the depth of water marked clearly and conspicuously on each side of the pool (at the shallow end and at the deep end); and
 - (v) not have diving boards installed where the water depth is less than 3.5 m; and
 - (vi) have scum-gutters with opening not less than 150 mm if they are to provide hand-holds; and
 - (vii) have the floor or bottom of the pool, except for the guide lines, of such colours that the light reflectance is not less than 60%.
- (g) For a public *swimming pool* or pool in which competitions are held—
- (i) all steps into the pool must be recessed; and
 - (ii) fittings must not project into the water area; and
 - (iii) piping must not be bracketed to the sides to provide hand-holds; and
 - (iv) surrounding concourses must be provided not less than 2 m wide, with a suitable non-slip surface, graded away from the pool and drained to waste; and
 - (v) dressing rooms with sanitary accommodation must be so located that bathers pass through that accommodation enroute to the *swimming pool*.
- (h) If the volume of a *swimming pool* exceeds 15 m³—
- (i) an adequate water recirculation, disinfection and filtration system must be installed; and
 - (ii) the inlet and outlet openings in a *swimming pool* for the purpose of water recirculation must be so located that water movement is continuous from inlet to outlet; and
 - (iii) * * * *
 - (iv) recirculation of water in a *swimming pool* must be so designed that the pool contents are recirculated not less than once in the period shown in **Tas Table G1.1(h)**; and
 - (v) water filtration rates must not exceed 12 250 L/m² of sand filter bed per hour, or an equivalent rate in other filter media.

Tas TABLE G1.1(h) RECIRCULATION OF WATER IN SWIMMING POOLS

Pool Type	Period
Outdoor <i>Swimming pool</i>	6 hours
Indoor <i>Swimming pool</i>	4 hours
Wading Pool	2 hours

- (i) Where no other suitable sanitary accommodation is provided, sanitary facilities must be provided in accordance with **Tas Table G1.1(i)**.

TAS TABLE G1.1(i) SANITARY FACILITIES AT SWIMMING POOLS

	Maximum Number Served by—					
	Closet Fixtures		Urinals		Wash Basins	
	1	Each Extra	1	Each Extra	1	Each Extra
Males	60	60	60	60	60	60
Females	40	40	—	—	60	60

- (j) Where no other suitable shower facilities are provided, showers must be provided so that each shower serves up to 40 persons.

PART G2 HEATING APPLIANCES, FIREPLACES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES

Delete *Objective* GO2(a) and insert Tas GO2(a) as follows:

Objective

Tas GO2

- (a) safeguard people from illness or injury caused by—
- (i) fire and emissions from combustion appliances installed within a building; and
 - (ii) malfunction of a pressure vessel installed within a building; and

Delete *Functional Statement* GF2.1 and insert Tas GF2.1 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT

Tas GF2.1

Combustion appliances using controlled combustion located in a building are to be installed in a way which reduces the likelihood of fire and harmful emissions spreading beyond the appliance.

Delete *Performance Requirement* GP2.1(c) and insert Tas GP2.1(c) as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT

Tas GP2.1

- (c) so that hot products of combustion will not—
- (i) escape through the walls of the associated components, and
 - (ii) discharge in a position that will cause fire to spread to nearby *combustible* materials or allow smoke to penetrate through nearby *windows*, ventilation inlets, or the like; and
 - (iii) in the case of solid-fuel burning appliances, be discharged above appropriate emission limits.

Delete G2.2(b) and insert Tas G2.2(b) as follows:

Tas G2.2 Installation of Appliances

- (b) Domestic solid-fuel burning appliances — Emissions: AS/NZS 4013
Installations: AS/NZS 2918.

G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS

Delete *Objective* GO5 and insert Tas GO5 as follows:

Objective

Tas GO5

The *Objective* of this Part is to—

- (a) safeguard occupants from injury; and
- (b) protect buildings, from the effects of a bushfire; and
- (c) assist fire fighting access and occupant evacuation; and
- (d) ensure the availability of water for fire fighting purposes.

Application

Tas GO5 only applies to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or

- (b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building, located in a *designated bushfire prone area*.

Delete *Functional Statement* GF5.1 and insert Tas GF5.1 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT

Tas GF5.1

A building constructed in a *designated bushfire prone area* is to—

- (a) provide a resistance to bushfires in order to reduce the danger to life and minimise the risk of the loss of the building; and
- (b) be accessible for fire fighting and occupant evacuation; and
- (c) have access on the site to a water supply for fire fighting purposes.

Application

Tas FF5.1 only applies to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
- (b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building, located in a *designated bushfire prone area*.

Delete *Performance Requirement* GP5.1 and insert Tas GP5.1 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT

Tas GP5.1

A building that is constructed in a *designated bushfire prone area* must—

- (a) be designed and constructed to reduce the risk of ignition from a bushfire while the fire front passes; and
- (b) be provided with vehicle access to the site to assist fire fighting and emergency personnel defend the building or evacuate occupants; and
- (c) provide access at all times to a sufficient supply of water for fire fighting purposes on the building site.

Application

Tas GP5.1 only applies to—

- (a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or

Tas GF5.1

- (b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building, located in a *designated bushfire prone area*.

Add *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* Tas G5.3 and Tas G5.4 as follows:

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Tas G5.3 Vehicular access

- (a) A Class 2 or 3 building in a *designated bushfire prone area* and the fire fighting water supply access point must be accessible by a private access road which is designed, constructed and maintained to a standard not less than a Modified 4C Access Road.
- (b) **A Modified 4C Access Road** is an all weather road which complies with the Australian Road Research Board "Unsealed Road Manual - Guidelines to good practice", 3rd Edition, March 2009 as a classification 4C Access Road and the following modified requirements:
- (i) Single lane private access roads less than 6 m carriageway width must have 20 m long passing bays of 6 m carriageway width, not more than 100 m apart;
 - (ii) A private access road longer than 100 m, must be provided with a driveway encircling the building or a hammerhead "T" or "Y" turning head 4 m wide and 8 m long, or a trafficable circular turning area of 10 m radius;
 - (iii) Culverts and bridges must be designed for a minimum vehicle load of 20 tonnes; and
 - (iv) Vegetation must be cleared for a height of 4 m, above the carriageway, and 2 m each side of the carriageway.

Tas G5.4 Water Supply

- (a) The external elements of a Class 2 or 3 building in a *designated bushfire prone area* must be within reach of a 120 m long hose connected to:
- (i) a fire hydrant with a minimum flow rate of 600 L per minute and minimum pressure of 200 kPa; or
 - (ii) a stored water supply in a water tank, *swimming pool*, dam or lake available for fire fighting at all times which has a capacity of at least 10,000 L for each separate building.
- (b) A water tank and above ground pipes and fittings used for a stored water supply must be made of non-rusting, *non-combustible*, non-heat-deforming materials and must be situated more than 6 m from a building.
- (c) The water tank must have an opening in the top of not less than 250 mm diameter or be fitted with a male 64 mm 5v thread coupling capable of delivering 270 L per minute.

After Part G5 insert Tas Part G101 as follows:

TAS PART G101 PROJECTIONS OVER WAYS

Tas G101.1 Construction and location of projections over ways

(a) In this Part the following meanings apply:

Awning means a cover projecting from a building to provide shelter or shade for people outside the building.

Balcony means a permanent projection from a building, designed to be walked, stood or sat on, and which is not roofed.

Kerb-line means the line of the carriageway edge of the kerb or, where there is no kerb, the line of the carriageway edge of the kerb if there was one.

Verandah means a permanent, roofed projection from a building, designed to be walked, stood or sat on.

Way includes a public road, street, alley or footpath.

- (b) Every bridge connecting buildings over a way must be of *non-combustible* material.
- (c) Every *awning* and *balcony* which projects over a way must be supported entirely from the building to which it is attached.
- (d) A *verandah* must not project over a way.
- (e) Every part of a building which projects over a way must comply with **Tas Table G101.1**.

Tas TABLE G101.1 PROJECTIONS OVER WAYS

Heights above ground or footpath level:	
<i>Awnings</i>	2.7 m
Shades or sunblinds (when not in use), signs, lamps or the like.	2.4 m
Other projections	3.0 m
Maximum Distance of projection over a way:	
<i>Awnings—</i>	
(i) <i>non-combustible</i>	not beyond a line 450 mm from the plumb of the kerb-line
(ii) <i>combustible</i>	1.0 m
<i>Balconies—</i>	1.0 m
<i>Other projections—</i>	
(i) in streets more than 15 m wide	900 mm
(ii) in streets not more than 15 m wide	600 mm
Note:	

Tas TABLE G101.1 PROJECTIONS OVER WAYS (Continued)

- | | |
|------|---|
| (i) | A door, gate, <i>window</i> , sash, or shutter is not deemed to open outwards unless, when open to its utmost extent, some part of it projects beyond the boundary line of the way. |
| (ii) | The total width of all the oriel <i>windows</i> and turrets projecting onto a way in any wall of any <i>storey</i> of a building, taken together, must not exceed 3/5 of the length of that wall on the level of that <i>storey</i> . |
- (f) Any *combustible awning* which projects over a way must not extend to within 1.5 m of an adjoining building.

After Tas G101.1 insert Tas G101.2 as follows:

Tas G101.2 Protection of Ways

- (a) Every roof of a building, and every *verandah*, *balcony*, or other similar projection or projecting *window* must be so designed and built as to prevent stormwater from it from dropping on, running over, or seeping under any way.
- (b) The roof of any *awning* that extends more than 1.0 m over a way must be drained to a down pipe.
- (c) Down pipes from *awnings*—
- (i) must not project beyond the boundary of a way; and
 - (ii) must be of steel or provided with a protective cover to a height of 2 m from the path.
- (d) Any excavation must be protected, by shoring or otherwise, as necessary to prevent subsidence into the excavation of any part of a way adjoining it.
- (e) Footings must not extend beyond the boundary of a way other than as shown in **Tas Table G101.2**.

Tas TABLE G101.2 PROJECTION OF FOOTINGS

Depth of top of footing below ground level	Maximum permissible projection
Less than 1.3 m	Nil
1.3 m to 3.0 m	450 mm
Exceeding 3.0 m	750 mm

SECTION H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H101 as follows:

OBJECTIVES

Tas Part H101 Workplaces

Every workplace must be constructed in a manner that will provide for the safety, health and welfare of workers using that workplace.

Tas Part H102 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H103 as follows:

Tas Part H103 Dining Rooms and Bar Rooms

Dining rooms and bar rooms must provide for the comfort, convenience and health of customers.

Tas Part H104 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

Tas Part H105 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H106 as follows:

Tas Part H106 Meat Premises

Meat premises must be constructed in such a manner that—

- (a) does not jeopardise animal welfare; and
- (b) provides for hygienic processing of animals; and
- (c) ensures the wholesomeness of meat and meat products.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H107 as follows:

Tas Part H107 Farm Dairy Premises

Dairies must be constructed in such a manner that contamination of milk can be avoided.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H108 as follows:

Tas Part H108 Pharmacies

Pharmacies must be able to be secured against entry and the interior must be able to be supervised by a pharmacist.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H109 as follows:

Tas Part H109 Health Services Establishments

Health services establishments must be able to be easily cleaned and must have adequate space for patients.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H110 as follows:

Tas Part H110 Premises Used for Activities Involving Skin Penetration

Premises used for activities involving skin penetration must provide for cleanliness of staff and comfort of customers.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H111 as follows:

Tas Part H111 Dental Surgeries and Chiropractors' Premises

Dental surgeries and chiropractors' premises must be able to be easily cleaned and must have a waiting room for patients.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H112 as follows:

Tas Part H112 Mortuaries

Mortuaries must be constructed in a manner that will ensure the health of staff and the general public.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H113 as follows:

Tas Part H113 Foundries

Foundries must provide for the comfort and safety of workers on the premises.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H114 as follows:

Tas Part H114 Premises for Manufacture or Processing of Glass Reinforced Plastic

Premises for manufacture or processing of glass reinforced plastic must—

- (a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers; and
- (b) be constructed in a manner that will avoid the spread of fire within the building and to other buildings.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H115 as follows:

Tas Part H115 Premises for the Production or Processing of Isocyanates

Premises for the production or processing of isocyanates must—

- (a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers; and
- (b) be constructed in a manner that will avoid the spread of fire within the building and to other buildings.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H116 as follows:

Tas Part H116 Premises for Electro-plating, Electro-polishing, Anodising or Etching

Premises for electro-plating, electro-polishing, anodising or etching must—

- (a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers; and
- (b) be constructed in a manner that will prevent the escape of liquids and atmospheric contaminants to other areas of the building.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H117 as follows:

Tas Part H117 Premises for Lead Processing

Premises for lead processing must—

- (a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers; and
- (b) be constructed in a manner that will minimise the lodgement of dust and must be capable of being flushed with water.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H118 as follows:

Tas Part H118 Booths for Spray-painting or Spray-coating

Booths for spray-painting or spray-coating must—

- (a) be constructed of *non-combustible* materials; and
- (b) have adequate means of escape; and
- (c) have suitable means of extracting harmful fumes from the booth.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H119 as follows:

Tas Part H119 Electricity Distribution Substations

Building-type electricity distribution substations must be housed in buildings that are tamper-proof, vermin-proof and weatherproof, and have adequate means of escape.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H120 as follows:

Tas Part H120 Premises for Storage of Dangerous Goods

Premises for storage of dangerous goods must—

- (a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers in the premises; and
- (b) be constructed so as not to be a danger to other people or buildings.

Insert *Objectives* for Tas Part H121 as follows:

Tas Part H121 Hairdressers' Premises

Hairdressers' premises must be of adequate size and amenity.

After Part H1 insert Tas Part H101 as follows:

TAS PART H101 WORKPLACES

Tas H101.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building or part of a building used as a workplace.

Tas H101.2 Floor area

- (a) The *floor area* of each office must be 7 m² or sufficient to provide 4 m² for each occupant, whichever is the greater.
- (b) Each floor plan dimension of any room which is a workplace must be greater than 2.5 m.

Tas H101.3 Floor surfaces

- (a) Every floor in a work place must have an even, unbroken slip-resistant surface, free from holes, indentations, projections or other obstructions that might create tripping or stumbling hazards.
- (b) Where the nature of the process is such that spillage of liquids is likely to occur, or where it is necessary for the floors to be cleansed with water or other liquids—
 - (i) the floors must be surfaced with materials that are impervious to the penetration of liquids likely to be spilt or used in the process of cleaning; and
 - (ii) the joints between the floors and the walls must be sealed with an impervious material and finished in such a manner that the joint is concavely rounded.

Tas H101.4 Floor drainage

- (a) Floors in a workplace must be graded to drain off liquids which must be carried away and disposed of by means of open paved channels, covered drains or pipes.
- (b) Floors graded as shown in **Tas Table H101.4** satisfy (a).

Tas TABLE H101.4 SLOPES OF FLOORS FOR DRAINAGE

Wash (or hose-down) areas	1:25
Wet (or mop-down) areas	1:50
Dry areas	1:100

- (c) Where the effluent from drains is likely to be offensive it must be intercepted by suitable deodorising tanks.
- (d) Wherever practicable, drains to carry off spilt liquids should be planned so that the liquids are intercepted close to the point of spillage and not allowed to spread over the working surface of the floor.

Tas H101.5 Floor covering

- (a) Where workers stand in substantially the one location while working on a floor of brick, metal, stone or other similar material, those floors or sections thereof, must be covered with—
 - (i) wood, rubber, linoleum, resilient types of plastic tiles; or
 - (ii) suitable compositions containing asphalt, rubber, cork, magnesite; or
 - (iii) other semi-resilient, thermally non-conductive materials on which the workers may stand.
- (b) Fixed coverings for local sections of floors must be inset flush with the main floor.

Tas H101.6 Overhead clearance

Pipes, fixtures and similar objects running above a passage or walkway must be fixed at a height to provide a clear distance not less than 2.1 m measured from the floor to the lowest part of the object.

Tas H101.7 Lighting

Interior lighting in a workplace must comply with the relevant requirements in AS/NZS 1680 Parts 2.4 and 2.5 and AS 1680 Parts 1, 2.1, 2.2, and 2.3.

Tas H101.8 Ventilation

Every workplace must be ventilated to remove offensive gases, vapours, fumes, dust or other airborne impurities.

Tas H101.9 Toilet facilities

- (a) Where practicable, toilet facilities must be located in the same building as the workplace or change room that they serve.
- (b) Toilet facilities which are not located in the same building as the workplace they serve must—
 - (i) be sited within the boundary of the premises; and
 - (ii) be housed in a fully roofed and clad building; and
 - (iii) be located at a distance not greater than 100 m from any workplace they serve; and
 - (iv) have provided, at every entrance doorway giving direct access to the interior of the building, a full length door fitted with a suitable locking device.
- (c) Every closet must be fitted with a door capable of being fastened on the inside.

Tas H101.10 Hand washing facilities

- (a) Hand washing facilities must be located in change rooms or in wash rooms accessible to change rooms and must be placed where they can be conveniently used by persons before eating meals and after using toilet facilities.
- (b) Where hand washing facilities are located in a change room, the *floor area* allowed for the change room must be increased by the area *required* for the washing equipment and its use.
- (c) Hand washing facilities include wash basins, wash troughs and circular ablution fountains.

Tas H101.11 Shower facilities

- (a) Where the work engaged upon is such that a change of clothing is necessary, showers with hot and cold running water must be provided at the rate of not less than shown in **Tas Table H101.11**.

Tas TABLE H101.11 SHOWERS IN WORK PLACES

Hot, arduous or dirty industries:	1 for every 15 employees
Light, clean industries:	1 for every 25 employees

- (b) Shower rooms must be located immediately adjacent to change rooms and urinal facilities, but urinal facilities may be provided in male shower rooms.
- (c) Separate and distinct shower accommodation must be provided for male and female employees.

Tas H101.12 Change rooms

Where change rooms are *required* by *Regulation 116(1)(b)* of the *Workplace Health and Safety Regulations 1998*, they must comply with **Tas Table H101.12**.

Tas TABLE H101.12 CHANGE ROOMS

Minimum area of room-	
for each person requiring to change clothes:	0.5 m ²
for each person not requiring to change clothes:	0.3 m ²
Minimum free floor space-	
between lockers facing one another:	1.5 m
between locker face and a wall:	1.0 m
free floor area:	2.0 m ²

Tas H101.13 Dining rooms

- (a) In any work place which is a factory or shop a dining area or dining room must be provided as set out in **Tas Table H101.13**.

Tas TABLE H101.13 DINING AREAS AND DINING ROOMS

For 10 or less employees: a suitable dining area separate from any working area:

Dining areas must be provided with adequate and hygienic facilities for the washing of eating utensils and for the storage of utensils where they will be protected from dust or vermin.

For more than 10 employees: a conveniently located dining room separate from any work room or work area:

Dining rooms must be equipped with a dish washing sink supplied with hot and cold water, draining board and cupboards in which foodstuffs and crockery can be stored free from dust and vermin, except that the provision of running water shall not apply where a reticulated water service cannot be made available.

NOTE: Where up to 15 persons of the same sex are employed, a combined change room/dining room may be provided.

- (b) In buildings to be used as offices, there must be provided on each *storey*, in a location accessible to all tenants, an area containing a dish washing sink supplied with hot and cold water, cupboard storage for food stuffs and utensils, and facilities for boiling water. Such areas must not be located in toilets, wash-rooms, or change rooms.

Tas H101.14 Rest rooms

Where 20 or more females are employed, a separate rest room, with convenient access to sanitary accommodation, must be provided in accordance with **Tas Table H101.14**.

Tas TABLE H101.14 FLOOR AREAS OF REST ROOMS

m ² of floor area:	6	9	12	15	Each extra 3
Max. number of females served:	100	200	300	400	200
NOTE: Where a first aid room or health centre is provided the rest room may be adjacent to it or part of it.					

Tas H101.15 First aid rooms and health centres

- (a) In every workplace, other than a shop or office, where the number of employees working on the premises exceeds 300 at any time, a self-contained health centre must be provided, at ground level if practicable, with *floor area* not less than 45 m², which includes—
- (i) treatment room with a *floor area* of at least 14 m², and
 - (ii) separate waiting room; and
 - (iii) separate recovery room; and
 - (iv) separate combined office and consulting room; and

- (v) toilet with air lock and washbasin with clean, hot and cold, running water; and
 - (vi) store room or adequate storage cupboards; and
 - (vii) walls, floors and ceilings impervious to moisture, easy to clean, free from cracks, ledges and sharp angles and finished in a light colour.
- (b) In every workplace where the number of employees exceeds 150 at any time and where a health centre has not been provided, a first aid room must be provided, suitably located with convenient access, readily accessible to sanitary accommodation, having a *floor area* not less than 14 m² and clearly marked "FIRST AID".

Tas H101.16 Doors

- (a) **Roller-shutter door:** Every power operated, roller-shutter door must be fitted with a continuous-pressure, manual switch for control of downward movement.
- (b) **Automatic-closing doors:** A suitable switch, controlled by a photoelectric device, must be fitted to stop or reverse the closing travel if a person or object should obtrude into the line of travel of the closing door.
- (c) **Sliding-door:** Every sliding door must be installed in such a manner that it will not derail or over-run its normal travel.

After Tas Part H101 insert Tas Part H102 as follows:

TAS PART H102 FOOD PREMISES

OBJECTIVE

Tas H102 O1

The *Objective* of this Part is to facilitate the safe manufacture, preparation, storage or packing of food for sale for human consumption.

Application:

- (a) **Tas H102 O1** applies to any premises where food intended for human consumption is manufactured, processed or sold and to which the following apply—
 - (i) *Food Act 2003*; or
 - (ii) *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990*.
- (b) **Tas H102 O1** includes, but is not limited to—
 - (i) bakehouses, and
 - (ii) bar service areas; and
 - (iii) premises for boning, curing, canning, mincing, pre-packing or other similar processes of preparation of meat for sale; and

- (iv) retail meat premises; and
 - (v) eating houses and tea shops; and
 - (vi) fish shops; and
 - (vii) kitchens in eating houses, restaurants, guest houses, motels and hotels; and
 - (viii) rooms for processing, manufacturing, packing, etc of fruit and vegetables, dairy products, ice blocks, ices, meat-for-sale, or other fish; and
 - (ix) shellfish processing premises; and
 - (x) take-away-food stores; and
 - (xi) breweries and wineries.
- (c) In **Tas H102 O1**, words and meanings as defined in the *Food Act 2003*, *Food Standards Code* and *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990* apply.

Limitations:

Tas H102 O1 does not apply to—

- (a) domestic dwellings classified as Class 1 buildings; or
- (b) boarding houses or the like classified as Class 1 buildings; or
- (c) tents, buildings or other structures used temporarily for serving meals to the public at any fair, show, race meeting or other public sports, games or amusements; or
- (d) dairies covered by **Tas H107**; or
- (e) live shellfish premises where live shellfish are being packed or handled for transport or transferral to shellfish processing premises; or
- (f) premises that only sell pre-packaged food that is not potentially hazardous.

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT**Tas H102 F1**

Each building or part of a building constructed as a food premise must be able to be used in such a manner that minimises opportunities for food contamination.

Application:

- (a) **Tas H102 F1** applies to any premises where food intended for human consumption is manufactured, processed or sold and to which the following apply—
 - (i) *Food Act 2003*; or
 - (ii) *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990*.
- (b) **Tas H102 F1** includes, but is not limited to—
 - (i) bakehouses; and
 - (ii) bar service areas; and

- (iii) premises for boning, curing, canning, mincing, pre-packing or other similar processes of preparation of meat for sale; and
 - (iv) retail meat premises; and
 - (v) eating houses and tea shops; and
 - (vi) fish shops; and
 - (vii) kitchens in eating houses, restaurants, guest houses, motels and hotels; and
 - (viii) rooms for processing, manufacturing, packing, etc of fruit and vegetables, dairy products, ice blocks, ices, meat-for-sale, or other fish; and
 - (ix) shellfish processing premises; and
 - (x) take-away-food stores; and
 - (xi) breweries and wineries.
- (c) In **Tas H102 F1**, words and meanings as defined in the *Food Act 2003*, *Food Standards Code* and *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990* apply.

Limitations:

Tas H102 F1 does not apply to—

- (a) domestic dwellings classified as Class 1 buildings; or
- (b) boarding houses or the like classified as Class 1 buildings; or
- (c) tents, buildings or other structures used temporarily for serving meals to the public at any fair, show, race meeting or other public sports, games or amusements, or
- (d) dairies covered by **Tas H107**; or
- (e) live shellfish premises where live shellfish are being packed or handled for transport or transferral to shellfish processing premises; or
- (f) premises that only sell pre-packaged food that is not potentially hazardous.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas H102 P1

The design and construction of food premises must—

- (a) be appropriate for the activities for which the premises are used; and
- (b) provide adequate space for the activities to be conducted on the food premises and for the fixtures, fittings and equipment used for those activities; and
- (c) permit the food premises to be effectively cleaned and, if necessary, sanitized; and
- (d) to the extent that is practicable:
 - (i) exclude dirt, dust, odours, fumes, smoke and other contaminants; and
 - (ii) not permit the entry of pests; and
 - (iii) not provide harbourage for pests.

Tas H102 P2

- (a) Food premises must have an adequate supply of water if water is to be used at the food premises for any of the activities conducted on the food premises.
- (b) A food business must use potable water for all activities that use water that are conducted on the food premises.

Limitation:

If a food business demonstrates that the use of non-potable water for a purpose will not adversely affect the safety of the food handled by the food business, subclause (b) does not apply.

Tas H102 P3

Food premises must have a sewage and waste water disposal system that—

- (a) will effectively dispose of all sewage and waste water; and
- (b) is constructed and located so that there is no likelihood of the sewage and waste water polluting the water supply or contaminating food.

Tas H102 P4

Food premises must have facilities for the storage of garbage and recyclable matter that—

- (a) adequately contain the volume and type of garbage and recyclable matter on the food premises; and
- (b) enclose the garbage or recyclable matter, if this is necessary to keep pests and animals away from it; and
- (c) are designed and constructed so that they may be easily and effectively cleaned.

Tas H102 P5

Food premises must have sufficient natural or mechanical ventilation to remove fumes, smoke and vapours from the food premises.

Tas H102 P6

Food premises must have lighting systems that provide sufficient natural or artificial light for the activities conducted on the food premises.

Tas H102 P7

- (a) Floors must be designed and constructed in a way that is appropriate for the activities conducted on the food premises.
- (b) Floor must—
 - (i) be able to be effectively cleaned; and
 - (ii) be unable to absorb grease, food particles or water; and

- (iii) be laid so that there is no ponding of water; and
- (iv) to the extent that is practicable, be unable to provide harbourage for pests.

Application:

The requirements for floors apply to the floors of all areas used for food handling, cleaning, sanitizing and personal hygiene except the following areas—

- (a) dining areas; and
- (b) drinking areas; and
- (c) other areas to which members of the public usually have access.

Limitation:

The following floors do not have to comply with sub-clause (b)—

- (i) floors of temporary food premises, including ground surfaces, that are unlikely to pose any risk of contamination of food handled on the food premises; and
- (ii) floors of food premises that are unlikely to pose any risk of contamination of food handled on the food premises provided the food business has obtained approval for their use.

Tas H102 P8

Walls and ceilings—

- (a) must be designed and constructed in a way that is appropriate for the activities conducted on the food premises; and
- (b) must be provided where they are necessary to protect food from contamination; and
- (c) provided in accordance with sub-clause (b) must be—
 - (i) sealed to prevent the entry of dirt, dust and pests; and
 - (ii) unable to absorb grease, food particles or water; and
 - (iii) be able to be easily and effectively cleaned; and
- (d) must—
 - (i) be able to be effectively cleaned; and
 - (ii) to the extent that is practicable, be unable to provide harbourage for pests.

Application:

The requirements for walls and ceilings apply to the walls and ceilings of all areas used for food handling, cleaning, sanitizing and personal hygiene except the following areas—

- (a) dining areas; and
- (b) drinking areas; and
- (c) other areas to which members of the public usually have access.

Tas H102 P9

- (a) Food premises must have hand washing facilities that are located where they can be easily accessed by food handlers—
 - (i) within areas where food handlers work if their hands are likely to be a source of contamination of food; and
 - (ii) if there are toilets on the food premises—immediately adjacent to the toilets or toilet cubicles.
- (b) Hand washing facilities must be—
 - (i) permanent fixtures; and
 - (ii) provided with a supply of warm running potable water; and
 - (iii) of a size that allows easy and effective hand washing; and
 - (iv) clearly designated for the sole purpose of washing hands, arms and face.

Tas H102 P10

Fixtures, fittings and equipment must—

- (a) be adequate for the production of wholesome food; and
- (b) be fit for their intended use; and
- (c) be designed, constructed, located and installed, and equipment must be located and, if necessary, installed, so that—
 - (i) there is no likelihood that they will cause food contamination; and
 - (ii) they are able to be easily and effectively cleaned; and
 - (iii) adjacent floors, walls, ceilings and other surfaces are able to be easily and effectively cleaned; and
 - (iv) to the extent that is practicable, they do not provide harbourage for pests; and
- (d) have food contact surfaces—
 - (i) able to be easily and effectively cleaned and, if necessary, sanitized if there is a likelihood that they will cause food contamination; and
 - (ii) unable to absorb grease, food particles and water if there is a likelihood that they will cause food contamination; and
 - (iii) made of a material that will not contaminate food.

Tas H102 P11

Food premises must have adequate storage facilities—

- (a) for the storage of items that are likely to be the source of contamination of food, including chemicals, clothing and personal belongings; and
- (b) located where there is no likelihood of stored items contaminating food or food contact surfaces.

Tas H102 P12

All refrigerated or cooling chambers must be constructed so that stored products will not be contaminated.

Application:

- (a) **Tas H102 P1 to P12** applies to any premises where food intended for human consumption is manufactured, processed or sold and to which the following apply—
 - (i) *Food Act 2003*, or
 - (ii) *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990*.
- (b) **Tas H102 P1 to P12** includes, but is not limited to—
 - (i) bakehouses; and
 - (ii) bar service areas; and
 - (iii) premises for boning, curing, canning, mincing, pre-packing or other similar processes of preparation of meat for sale; and
 - (iv) retail meat premises; and
 - (v) eating houses and tea shops; and
 - (vi) fish shops; and
 - (vii) kitchens in eating houses, restaurants, guest houses, motels and hotels; and
 - (viii) rooms for processing, manufacturing, packing, etc of fruit and vegetables, dairy products, ice blocks, ices, meat-for-sale, or other fish; and
 - (ix) shellfish processing premises; and
 - (x) take-away-food stores; and
 - (xi) breweries and wineries.
- (c) In **Tas H102 P1 to P12**, words and meaning as defined in the *Food Act 2003*, *Food Standards Code* and *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990* apply.

Limitations:

Tas H102 P1 to P12 do not apply to—

- (a) domestic dwellings classified as Class 1 buildings; or
- (b) boarding houses or the like classified as Class 1 buildings; or
- (c) tents, buildings or other structures used temporarily for serving meals to the public at any fair, show, race meeting or other public sports, games or amusements; or
- (d) dairies covered by **Tas H107**; or
- (e) live shellfish premises where live shellfish are being packed or handled for transport or transferral to shellfish processing premises; or
- (f) premises that only sell pre-packaged food that is not potentially hazardous.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**Tas H102.0 Application of Part**

- (a) This Part applies to any premises where food intended for human consumption is manufactured, processed or sold and to which the following apply—
 - (i) *Food Act 2003*; or
 - (ii) *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990*.
- (b) This Part includes, but is not limited to—
 - (i) bakehouses; and
 - (ii) bar service areas; and
 - (iii) premises for boning, curing, canning, mincing, pre-packing or other similar processes of preparation of meat for sale; and
 - (iv) retail meat premises; and
 - (v) eating houses and tea shops; and
 - (vi) fish shops; and
 - (vii) kitchens in eating houses, restaurants, guest-houses, motels and hotels; and
 - (viii) rooms for processing, manufacturing, packing, etc of fruit and vegetables, dairy products, ice blocks, ices, meat-for-sale or other fish; and
 - (ix) shellfish processing premises; and
 - (x) take-away-food stores; and
 - (xi) breweries and wineries.
- (c) This Part does not apply to—
 - (i) boarding houses or the like classified as Class 1 buildings; or
 - (ii) tents, buildings or other structures used temporarily for serving meals to the public at any fair, show, race meeting or other public sports, games or amusements; or
 - (iii) dairies covered by **Tas Part H107**; or
 - (iv) live shellfish premises where live shellfish are being packed or handled for transport or transferral to shellfish processing premises; or
 - (v) premises that only sell pre-packaged food that is not potentially hazardous.
- (d) In this Part, words and meanings as defined in the *Food Act 2003*, *Food Standards Code* and *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990* apply.

Tas H102.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements Tas H102 P1 to Tas H102 P12 are satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of **Tas H102.0** to **Tas H102.17**.

Tas H102.2 General Requirements

- (a) The provision of—
 - (i) close-fitting windows and doors; and
 - (ii) air intakes that do not draw in contaminated air; and
 - (iii) air locks and self-closing doors to separate toilet areas, laundries and living areas from food handling areas; or
 - (iv) mechanical ventilation that removes sources of contamination,
 satisfies **Tas H102 P1(d)(i)**.
- (b) The provision of—
 - (i) self-closing or pest-screened external doors; and
 - (ii) mesh screens at opening windows or other ventilation openings; and
 - (iii) sealing to drains, grease traps and ventilation pipes; and
 - (iv) sealing to openings where pipes pass through external walls; and
 - (v) the installation of pest-proof flashings to doors,
 satisfies **Tas H102 P1(d)(ii)**.
- (c) The provision of—
 - (i) vermin-proof sealing; or
 - (ii) filling; or
 - (iii) access for inspection and cleaning of boxed-in areas,
 satisfies **Tas H102 P1(d)(iii)**.
- (d) The provision of a reticulated water supply from—
 - (i) a regulated entity; or
 - (ii) a private water supply with on-site treatment,
 which meets the Australian Drinking Water Guidelines, satisfies **Tas H102 P2(b)**.

Note: 'Regulated entity' has the same meaning as the Plumbing Regulations 2004.

Tas H102.3 Pests and contaminants

Premises where customers are served outside the premises through an opening, that has an appliance for the elimination of flies and mechanical ventilation adequate to exhaust air through the opening at a rate of not less than 5 litres per second for each square metre of opening, satisfies **Tas H102 P1(d)**.

Tas H102.4 Drains and Pipes

Premises satisfy **Tas H102 P3** where—

- (a) A grease trap, a gully trap or an untrapped opening connected directly with a drain or sewer, is not installed in a room used for preparation, processing, packing or storing of food for sale; and

- (b) as far as is practicable, service pipes are concealed beneath the surface of walls, floors or ceilings, or are fixed clear of the wall, floor or ceiling, at such distance as to facilitate cleaning.

Tas H102.5 Offensive material and trade waste

Where offensive material or trade waste is stored, a separate area or room which—

- (a) is paved and easily cleanable; and
- (b) is graded to drain to a suitable drainage system; and
- (c) has available a supply of water under pressure,

satisfies **Tas H102 P4**.

Tas H102.6 Ventilation

A mechanical ventilating exhaust system complying with the requirements of AS/NZS 1668.1 and AS 1668.2 satisfies **Tas H102 P5**.

Tas H102.7 Lighting

- (a) A lighting system that complies with AS 1680.1 and AS/NZS 1680.2.4 satisfies **Tas H102 P6**.
- (b) In areas where open food is handled or stored, light fittings which are—
 - (i) designed and constructed to prevent contamination of food should the globe or tube shatter; and
 - (ii) free from any features that would harbour dirt, dust, or insects or make the fitting difficult to clean,

satisfies **Tas H102 P6(b)(i)**.

Tas H102.8 Floors, walls and ceilings

- (a) Floors, walls and ceilings constructed in accordance with Section 3 of AS 4674 (2004), satisfy **Tas H102 P7** and **Tas H102 P8**.
- (b) The wall and ceiling provisions of (a) do not apply to areas in which all food for sale is completely enclosed and otherwise protected from contamination by processing plants, other appliances or other means.

Tas H102.9 Separation of work place

- (a) A room where food for sale is processed, manufactured, prepared, deposited, treated, stored or packed, that does not have direct communication with a room containing sanitary facilities, living quarters, laundry, bathroom or garage or a room where animals are housed, satisfies **Tas H102 P8(b)**.
- (b) 'Direct communication' means a doorway, a window or other opening in a wall between a food preparation or storage area opening directly onto a room described in (a). Access between those areas via another room, a hallway, or an airlock, satisfies **Tas H102 P8(b)**.

Tas H102.10 Washbasins

- (a) Premises or places for preparation or storage of food for sale provided with not less than one washbasin complying with **(b)** within five metres of any activity where hands are likely to be a source of contamination of food, satisfies **Tas H102 P9**.
- (b) Each washbasin must—
 - (i) have hot and cold water through a common outlet; and
 - (ii) have a capacity of at least 11 litres; and
 - (iii) provide not less than 250 mm between the spout and the bottom of the basin; and
 - (iv) be in a position that is not obstructed.

Tas H102.11 Sinks

- (a) Where equipment and utensils are required to be manually cleaned and sanitized, or food preparation requires a sink, premises that are provided with a suitably sized double bowl sink for equipment washing and a separate suitably sized sink for food preparation of stainless steel supplied with—
 - (i) hot and cold water; and
 - (ii) an integral drainer on at least one side or a third bowl,satisfies **Tas H102 P10**.
- (b) A sink installed adjacent to a wall or other vertical surface, that is fitted with an integral flashing to that wall or vertical surface to a height of not less than 150 mm, satisfies **Tas H102 P10**.
- (c) A sink provided with an integral surround not less than 150 mm wide except on sides with an integral flashing as in **(b)**, satisfies **Tas H102 P10**.
- (d) A cleaner's sink separated from food storage and handling areas provided for the emptying of cleaning water, satisfies **Tas H102 P10**.

Tas H102.12 Design, construction and installation of fixtures, fittings and equipment

- (a) The provision of fixtures, fittings and equipment designed, constructed and installed in accordance with clause 4.2 and clause 4.3 of AS 4674 satisfies **Tas H102 P10**.
- (b) The provision of—
 - (i) automatic equipment that uses water to sanitize utensils or other equipment and only operate for the purposes of sanitation when the water is at a temperature that will sanitize the utensils or equipment; or
 - (ii) a sink that meets **Tas H102.11**,satisfies **Tas H102 P10**.

Tas H102.13 Storage of materials and equipment

- (a) Separate areas for the storage of fuel, cleaning compounds and general maintenance equipment provided so as to prevent the contamination of the product in the event of a spillage or any other form of breakdown, satisfies **Tas H102 P11**.
- (b) A separate area for the storage of staff clothing and personal effects, satisfies **Tas H102 P11**.

Tas H102.14 Food store

An eating house provided with a dry-food store, satisfies **Tas H102 P11**.

Tas H102.15 Meat Premises

- (a) Premises used for the preparation or sale of red meat, other than those licensed under the *Meat Hygiene Act 1985*, that comply with—
 - (i) **Tas Part H106**, or
 - (ii) the provisions of **Tas H102.2** to **Tas H102.13** and **Tas H102.17**, satisfy in relation to building construction, the requirements of **Tas H102 P1** to **P12**.

Tas H102.16 Dairy produce

Definition:

- (a) **Dairy produce** means milk, cream, butter, cheese, condensed milk, ice-cream, yoghurt and any other product of milk and includes margarine and dairy blend.
- (b) Premises designed and constructed in compliance with the Export Control (Processed Food) Orders satisfy the special requirements of this code for premises to be used for the manufacture of *dairy produce*.

Tas H102.17 Refrigerated and cooling chambers

The construction of a refrigerated chamber or cooling chamber installed in premises for storage of food complying with the requirements for that premises, satisfies **Tas H102 P12** where they have—

- (a) internal and external panels adhered directly to the insulating core material to form an integral wall section with tight fitting edges resistant to penetration by liquids; and
- (b) every joint caulked with a water-resistant, flexible sealer and finished in such a manner as to prevent migration of liquids into the core; and
- (c) every intersection of walls with floors and walls with walls coved with a radius not less than 25 mm; and
- (d) exposed slot-head screws or open-headed pop rivets filled with sealer; and
- (e) service pipes and conduits concealed in floors, walls or ceilings, if practicable, or fixed on brackets to provide clearances of not less than 25 mm between the pipe and a wall and 100 mm between the pipe and a floor; and
- (f) fittings not fixed over exposed pipes nor in a position to make difficult the cleaning of the pipe and surrounding area; and

- (g) rat proof construction, and any inaccessible spaces between the low temperature room and surrounding walls, ceilings and fixtures proof against rats and vermin; and
- (h) floors graded, as shown in **Tas Table H102.17(h)**, to drains located outside the chamber as near as practicable to the door opening; and
- (i) drainage from cooling units within the chamber constructed in accordance with **Tas Table H102.17(i)**, draining to a trapped outlet located outside the chamber.

Tas TABLE H102.17(h) FLOOR DRAINAGE OF REFRIGERATED OR COOLING CHAMBERS

	FLOOR SLOPE
Active chillers	not less than 1:50
Other chambers	not less than 1:100

Tas TABLE H102.17(i) DRAINAGE FROM COOLING UNITS WITHIN REFRIGERATED CHAMBERS OR COOLING CHAMBERS

Wall-mounted cooling units - drain water must be contained and removed by either a wall-mounted channel or a spoon drain located under the coil.
Floor-mounted cooling units - drain water must be confined by kerbs, of a height not less than 150 mm, and directed to a trapped drain outlet.
Ceiling-mounted cooling units - drain water must be confined by suitable insulated drip trays directly connected to the drainage system.

After Tas Part H102 insert Tas Part H103 as follows:

TAS PART H103 DINING ROOMS AND BAR ROOMS

Tas H103.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to all dining rooms and bar rooms (excluding bar service areas) in licensed premises covered by the *Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990*.

Tas H103.2 Sanitary facilities

- (a) Separate sanitary facilities for males and females must be provided in close proximity to each dining room and bar room in licensed premises.
- (b) Where the sanitary facilities are not accessed from within the dining room or bar area, reasonable fixed protection from the elements must be provided.

Tas H103.3 Separation from other areas

A dining room must not have direct opening to living quarters, a laundry, bathroom or garage or a room where animals are housed.

TAS PART H104 * * * * *

This Part has been deliberately left blank.

TAS PART H105 * * * * *

This Part has been deliberately left blank.

After Tas Part H105 insert Tas Part H106 as follows:

TAS PART H106 MEAT PREMISES

Tas H106.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to—

- (a) meat premises processing animals, including game and poultry, and producing meat and meat products for human consumption; and
- (b) pet food works licensed under *Meat Hygiene Act 1985*.

Tas H106.2 Premises Processing Animals and Meat

Premises used for the processing of animals and meat for human consumption must comply with the relevant Parts and Sections of the Australian Standards listed below:

- (a) Hygienic Production and Transportation of Meat and Meat Products for Human Consumption, AS 4696 - Part 7, Sections 19 to 21.
- (b) Hygienic Production of Game Meat for Human Consumption, AS 4464 - Sections 6 and 8.
- (c) Construction of Premises and Hygienic Production of Poultry Meat for Human Consumption, AS 4465 - Part A, Sections 3 to 12.
- (d) Hygienic Production of Rabbit Meat for Human Consumption, AS 4466 - Section 5.
- (e) Hygienic Rendering of Animal Products, AS 5008 - Section 4.
- (f) Hygienic Production of Ratite (Emu/Ostrich) Meat for Human Consumption, AS 5010 - Section 5.
- (g) Hygienic Production of Natural Casings for Human Consumption, AS 5011 - Section 4.
- (h) Tasmania Code of Practice for Hygienic Production of Pet Food - Section 5.

After Tas Part H106 insert Tas Part H107 as follows:

TAS PART H107 FARM DAIRY PREMISES

Tas H107.1 Application of this Part

This part is applicable to every farm dairy as covered by the *Tasmanian Dairy Industry Act 1994*.

Tas H107.2 Milking Sheds and Holding Yards

- (a) The walls (including the walls of the pit of a herringbone design milking shed) must be non absorbent and easy to clean.
- (b) The floor of a holding yard and a milking shed must be non absorbent, easy to clean and free-draining.
- (c) The lighting of a holding yard and a milking shed must be adequate for proper milking.
- (d) The working space in a milking shed is to be sufficient to minimise the risk of contamination of milk during milking.
- (e) Effluent from a holding yard and a milking shed is to be drained to a suitable point for disposal.
- (f) The requirements of (a), (b) and (c) are satisfied if—
 - (i) the walls are constructed of well-compacted smooth finish concrete or other material sealed to be impervious to moisture; and
 - (ii) the floors are constructed of well-compacted smooth finish concrete and graded to a drain; and
 - (iii) joints between wall sections and walls and floors are sealed to prevent entry of water and pests; and
 - (iv) artificial lighting is designed to comply with AS 1680.

Tas H107.3 Milk Receiving Area and Milk Storage Room

- (a) A Milk Receiving Area and Milk Storage Room must—
 - (i) have internal surfaces that are smooth, non-absorbent, free-draining and easy to clean; and
 - (ii) be constructed so as to prevent the entry of dust, insects, pests, birds and animals; and
 - (iii) have adequate artificial lighting that—
 - (A) is located to provide a clear view of the milk for grading and measuring purposes; and
 - (B) the lights over a bulk vat are to be protected to prevent glass entering the vat if the light is broken; and
 - (C) have switches appropriately located at the milk collection areas; and
 - (iv) have adequate ventilation to aid the drying of floors and walls between milkings.
- (b) The requirements of (a) are satisfied if—

- (i) the floors are constructed of well-compacted smooth finish concrete and graded to a drain; and
- (ii) the internal surfaces are smooth, sealed and washable; and
- (iii) joints between wall sections and walls and floors are sealed to prevent entry of water and pests; and
- (iv) artificial lighting is designed to comply with AS 1680; and
- (v) all openings are fitted with doors, windows or screens; and
- (vi) the milk is stored in a bulk storage tank which complies with AS 1187; and
- (vii) ventilation is provided in accordance with **F4.5**.

Tas H107.4 Water supply

An adequate and suitable supply of water must be available for plant sanitation, teat washing, milk cooling and vat rinsing.

After Tas Part H107 insert Tas Part H108 as follows:

TAS PART H108 PHARMACIES

Tas H108.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to all pharmacies to which the *Pharmacy Regulations 1966* apply.

Tas H108.2 Definition

In this Part the following meaning applies—

Dispensary means the room or area within a pharmacy or other premises which a registered pharmaceutical chemist uses for the compounding or dispensing of prescriptions, medicines or drugs.

Tas H108.3 Pharmacy premises

- (a) Each premises used as a pharmacy must have—
 - (i) a *dispensary* for the compounding or dispensing of drugs and for the storage of material used in dispensing; and
 - (ii) space for the storage of narcotic substances and poisons as *required* by the *Poisons Regulations 1975*; and
 - (iii) a place for unpacking containers or cases and goods; and
 - (iv) a room for storing merchandise not used in dispensing.
- (b) A pharmacy may have an area set aside for retailing merchandise that is not compounded or dispensed.

Tas H108.4 Dispensary

- (a) A *dispensary* must be located—

- (i) within a pharmacy in a position to enable a person in the *dispensary* to supervise the *dispensary*, storage areas for narcotic substances and poisons, the entrances to unpacking areas and areas for storing other substances, and the retail area; and
 - (ii) separate from any place where goods are unpacked or where general merchandise, not used in dispensing, is stored.
- (b) Each *dispensary* must be provided with—
- (i) a sink and drainage board of impervious material moulded or manufactured in one piece; and
 - (ii) a reticulated supply of hot and a cold water capable of providing to the sink adequate quantities of water for dispensing purposes; and
 - (iii) space for a dispensing bench with a working area not less than 1.4 m².

Tas H108.5 Security of dispensary

- (a) Every *dispensary* and enclosure set aside for the storage of narcotic substances and poisons must be able to be secured against entry.
- (b) If a *dispensary* is located in a pharmacy that is capable of being secured against entry at all times while the *dispensary* is not in use, then the *dispensary* is deemed to be secured against entry.

After Tas Part H108 insert Tas Part H109 as follows:

TAS PART H109 HEALTH SERVICES ESTABLISHMENTS

Tas H109.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to health services establishments as defined in the Health Services Establishment Act (Tas) 2006 including—

- (a) a day procedure centre; or
- (b) a private hospital; or
- (c) a residential care service building.

Tas H109.2 Design and construction of health services establishments

Every health services establishment must be constructed and maintained in accordance with the Health Services Establishments Code.

After Tas Part H109 insert Tas Part H110 as follows:

TAS PART H110 PREMISES USED FOR ACTIVITIES INVOLVING SKIN PENETRATION

Tas H110.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to premises for tattooing, ear-piercing, acupuncture and like activities, which require a "public health risk activity" licence under the *Public Health Act 1997*.

Tas H110.2 Sanitary facilities

Sanitary facilities for customers must be provided and must include not less than—

- (a) one water closet; and
- (b) one washbasin.

Tas H110.3 Washbasins

The area in which skin penetration is done must be provided with—

- (a) one wash basin for each 10, or part of 10 employees; and
- (b) an adequate supply of hot and cold water controlled by foot-operated or other suitable means which allows the use of a tap without hand contact.

After Tas Part H110 insert Tas Part H111 as follows:

TAS PART H111 DENTAL SURGERIES AND CHIROPRACTORS' PREMISES

Tas H111.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to premises to be used—

- (a) as a dental surgery and covered by the *Dental Regulations 1983*, or
- (b) in the practice of chiropractic and covered by the *Chiropractors Regulations 1984*.

Tas H111.2 Waiting room

Each dental surgery and chiropractor's premises must have a separate waiting room.

Tas H111.3 Floor, walls and ceiling

The floor, walls and ceiling of a dentist's surgery and each room used in conjunction with that surgery or in a chiropractor's premises must be finished with materials which enable easy cleaning and disinfecting.

Tas H111.4 Disposal of liquid wastes

The operating section of a dental surgery must have adequate means for the disposal of waste water, other liquids and infected matter.

After Tas Part H111 insert Tas Part H112 as follows.

TAS PART H112 MORTUARIES

Tas H112.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to any premises used for the storage or preparation for burial, cremation or disposal by other means, of bodies of deceased persons.

Tas H112.2 Layout of mortuary

- (a) A mortuary may be integral with the remainder of a building but must be separated physically from all public areas of that building.
- (b) Each mortuary at which bodies are prepared for burial, cremation or other disposal must be provided with a body preparation room—
 - (i) capable of being isolated from the remainder of the premises; and
 - (ii) having a *floor area* not less than 10 m².
- (c) A vehicle reception area or garage must be provided adjacent to and with direct access to the storage room or body preparation room to ensure that the transfer of uncoffined bodies is screened from public view
- (d) Access to toilet and shower facilities from any other part of the mortuary premises must be only by way of an air lock.

Tas H112.3 Construction of body preparation room

- (a) The floor must be—
 - (i) of impervious material with a smooth, unbroken surface; and
 - (ii) uniformly graded to a floor drain.
- (b) All walls and partitions must be of concrete or masonry with a smooth, unbroken finish for ease of cleaning.
- (c) All joints between the floor, walls, partitions, ceiling, ventilation grilles, fittings, pipework, *windows* and light fittings must be sealed with impervious material for ease of cleaning.
- (d) All joints between the floor and walls or partitions must be coved for ease of cleaning.
- (e) The body preparation room must be provided with at least one washbasin, fitted with elbow or foot-operated taps, and an adequate supply of hot and cold water.
- (f) The body preparation room must be provided with refrigerated storage facilities—
 - (i) with sufficient capacity for the storage of at least two adult bodies; and
 - (ii) capable of maintaining an internal temperature between 1° and 5°C.

Tas H112.4 Water supply and sewerage

Each mortuary with a body preparation room must be connected to—

- (a) a permanent water supply with a physical discontinuity, provided by a registered break tank or reduced pressure zone device, between the water supply and all equipment, appliances, fittings and areas in the mortuary; and
- (b) a water carriage sewerage system.

After Tas Part H112 insert Tas Part H113 as follows:

TAS PART H113 FOUNDRIES

Tas H113.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building or premises in which foundry operations are undertaken.

Tas H113.2 General

- (a) Every floor in a foundry must be level and, in places other than where molten metal is poured, must be composed of concrete or similar material or wooden blocks.
- (b) Every part of a foundry must be not less than 4.2 m high—
 - (i) where a ceiling is provided, measured from the floor to the ceiling; or
 - (ii) where a ceiling is not provided, measured from the floor to the lowest part of the roof.

Tas H113.3 Cupola charging platform

- (a) The floors of cupola charging platforms must be—
 - (i) of heavy timber or non-slip steel plate; and
 - (ii) securely fixed in position; and
 - (iii) level.
- (b) All parts of the cupola charging platform must be covered by a roof not less than 3 m above the platform.
- (c) A cupola charging platform must have—
 - (i) a wall, not less than 1 m high, measured from the floor of the platform, constructed to surround the platform; and
 - (ii) the sides between the top of the wall and the roof suitably waterproofed and ventilated.
- (d) A properly constructed access stair or ramp must be provided to give access to every cupola charging platform and must comply with AS 1657.

Tas H113.4 Deep moulds and pits

Deep moulds or pits, for permanent use—

- (a) must be lined with bricks, concrete, or other suitable material in such a manner as to provide adequate reinforcement and to keep the pit or mould in a dry condition; and

- (b) must be securely fenced by means of a wall of adequate construction, railings or chains and stanchions raised, in each case, to a height not less than 1 m above the surface of the surrounding floor.

Tas H113.5 Pot furnaces

Where pot furnaces are below ground level, the pit must be covered by a substantial grating at the point at which metal is removed from the furnace, and must at all other points be securely fenced as in **Tas H113.4(b)**.

After Tas Part H113 insert Tas Part H114 as follows:

TAS PART H114 PREMISES FOR MANUFACTURE OR PROCESSING OF GLASS REINFORCED PLASTICS

Tas H114.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building in which glass reinforced plastics are manufactured or processed.

Tas H114.2 Separation from other buildings

A building for manufacture or processing of glass fibre plastics must be—

- (a) separated from other buildings or parts of an occupancy by means of impervious walls with FRL at least 120/120/120; or
- (b) separated from all other buildings by a clear space of not less than 6 m.

Tas H114.3 Rise in storeys

The building must be of single *storey* construction.

Tas H114.4 Maximum floor areas

The *floor area* of any building or fire-separated section must not exceed the relevant maximum *floor area* set out in **Tas Table H114.4**.

Tas TABLE H114.4 MAXIMUM FLOOR AREA (m²) OF BUILDINGS FOR MANUFACTURE OR PROCESSING OF GLASS REINFORCED PLASTICS OR ISOCYANATES

	Type of construction of building—		
	Type A	Type B	Type C
Not Sprinklered	1500	1200	1000
Sprinklered	6000	5000	3000

Tas H114.5 Required exits

- (a) Each fire-separated section of a building which is a work place must have at least two *exits* for escape purposes and the number and location of the *exits* must be such that any point on the floor is not further than 20 m from one of the *exits*.
- (b) Only *exits* with vertically hinged swinging doors may be considered as *exits* for the purposes of this clause.

Tas H114.6 Hand laminating and spray depositing

The walls and floors of areas to be used for hand laminating and spray depositing must be constructed of *non-combustible* materials.

Tas H114.7 Ventilation

- (a) Mechanical or natural ventilation must be via low-level, exhaust ducting in a wall and a fixed, open, floor-level, fresh-air inlet ducting in the opposite wall such as to ensure a cross flow of the ventilation air over the complete working area.
- (b) Mechanical ventilation must provide not less than 6 air changes per hour.
- (c) The ventilation fan and exhaust ducting must be arranged in such a manner as to—
 - (i) produce a negative pressure within any exhaust ducting within the work place so that a leak in the ducting will not vent exhaust air back to the work place; and
 - (ii) vent the exhaust air to the atmosphere so as to prevent recirculation of that exhaust air.

Tas H114.8 Smoke and heat roof vents

Each fire-separated section must be provided with *automatic* smoke and heat roof vents.

After Tas Part H114 insert Tas Part H115 as follows:

TAS PART H115 PREMISES FOR PRODUCTION OR PROCESSING OF ISOCYANATES

Tas H115.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building in which isocyanate production or processing is undertaken.

Tas H115.2 Areas of work places

Work places in which an isocyanate industry is carried on must be divided into the following divisional areas:

- (a) Administration and staff amenities.
- (b) Workshop.
- (c) Bulk stores.
- (d) Curing room.
- (e) Processing plant.
- (f) Raw materials plant.
- (g) Manufacture.

Tas H115.3 Separation from other areas and buildings

- (a) Each of the divisional areas *required* by **Tas H115.2** other than the administration and staff amenities building, must be—
 - (i) separated from each of the other divisional areas by means of an impervious wall with an FRL not less than 120/120/120; or
 - (ii) separated from all other buildings by a clear space of not less than 6 m.
- (b) Notwithstanding the distance requirements of (a), bulk stores of polyols and bulk stores of isocyanates must comply with the requirements of the *Dangerous Substances (Safe Handling) Regulations 2009*.

Tas H115.4 Rise in storeys

The building must be of single *storey* construction.

Tas H115.5 Maximum floor areas

The *floor area* of any building or fire-separated section must not exceed the area shown in **Tas Table H114.4**.

Tas H115.6 Required exits

- (a) Every building or divisional area of a work place must have not less than 2 *exits* for escape purposes.
- (b) The number and location of the *exits* must be such that any point on the floor is not more than 20 m from one of the *exits*.
- (c) Only *exits* with vertically hinged swinging doors may be considered as *exits* for the purposes of this clause.

Tas H115.7 Bulk stores for polyols and isocyanates

- (a) A bulk store for polyols must be constructed from *non-combustible* materials and have a smooth impervious concrete floor and it must protect the polyols from direct exposure to the sun's radiation.
- (b) A bulk store for isocyanates must—
 - (i) be constructed from *non-combustible* materials, have a smooth impervious concrete floor, and must protect the isocyanate containers from direct exposure to the sun; and

- (ii) if it is used for storage of either TDI or HDI and is not an open sided building, be fitted with mechanical ventilation so that the TLV is not exceeded at any time provided that the ventilation must provide not less than 6 air changes per hour.
- (c) The area around both a polyol bulk store and an isocyanate bulk store must be bunded, the bund or bunds must ensure separation of the polyol and isocyanate areas and each bund must have a capacity of 10% more than the storage capacity of the largest tank it protects.

Tas H115.8 Curing room

The curing room for the storage of newly produced flexible polyurethane foam must be constructed of *non-combustible* materials with a smooth impervious concrete floor and fitted *automatic* fire vents in the roof.

After Tas Part H115 insert Tas Part H116 as follows:

TAS PART H116 PREMISES FOR ELECTRO-PLATING ELECTRO-POLISHING, ANODISING OR ETCHING

Tas H116.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building where any of the processes of electro-plating, electro-polishing, anodising or etching are undertaken.

Tas H116.2 Floors

The floor of every plating area must be—

- (a) so graded as to—
 - (i) permit easy flushing with water; and
 - (ii) prevent liquids from flowing from the area into other parts of the work place; and
- (b) chemically resistant to the solutions used in the process.

Tas H116.3 Height of plating area

Every part of a plating area must be not less than 2.7 m in height—

- (a) measured from the floor to the ceiling if a ceiling is provided; or
- (b) measured from the floor to the lowest part of the roof if a ceiling is not provided.

Tas H116.4 Air space

In every plating area there must be not less than 14 m³ of air space for each person employed and, in the calculation of such space, the height taken into account must not exceed 4.2 m.

Tas H116.5 Ceiling construction

The ceiling of a plating area must be so constructed as to prevent, so far as is practicable, atmospheric contaminants from escaping into rooms or work places, situated above the level of the ceiling.

After Tas Part H116 insert Tas Part H117 as follows:

TAS PART H117 PREMISES FOR LEAD PROCESSING

Tas H117.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building in which lead processes are used.

Tas H117.2 Floors

- (a) The floor of every work place where a lead process is used must be—
 - (i) so constructed of concrete or other suitable material as to be smooth and impervious to fluids; and
 - (ii) graded and properly drained to permit flushing with water.
- (b) The material of which the floor is constructed must be applied to the walls to a height of not less than 75 mm in such a fashion that the angle between the walls and the floor is coved for easy cleaning.

Tas H117.3 Height of lead processing areas

Every part of a lead processing area must be not less than 2.7 m in height—

- (a) where a ceiling is provided, measured from the floor to the ceiling; or
- (b) where a ceiling is not provided, measured from the floor to the lowest part of the roof.

Tas H117.4 Air space and floor space

- (a) In every lead processing area there must be not less than 14 m³ of air space for each person employed therein, and in the calculation of such space the maximum height taken must be not greater than 4.2 m; and
- (b) total floor space for the persons employed in such area, exclusive of space used for storage, must be not less than 3.3 m² for each person so employed.

Tas H117.5 Interior of lead processing areas

- (a) The inner surfaces of the walls of every lead processing area must be of a smooth material impervious to fluids and must not contain any projections on which dust may lodge; and
- (b) the interior construction of the ceiling or roof must, so far as is practicable, be such that dust will not settle on it.

Tas H117.6 Dust collection

Any areas in which dust-forming lead materials are manipulated, moved or treated must be served by a mechanical exhaust ventilation system capable of safely and effectively collecting all dust.

Tas H117.7 Isolation of certain processes

Where any process of pasting of electric accumulator plates or drying of paste plates, or melting down of pasted plates or of formation with tacking in the electric accumulator industry or of manipulation of dry oxide of lead, is to be carried on in the same room as any other lead process, the processes of pasting, drying, melting, formation or manipulation must be isolated from one another and from any other lead process—

- (a) by a partition extending from the floor to the ceiling in the case of a room having a ceiling not more than 3.6 m in height, or to a height of 2.7 m in any other case; or
- (b) by some other suitable method.

Tas H117.8 Drying room shelves

The racks or shelves provided in any drying room must not be more than 2.6 m from the floor nor more than 650 mm in width except that, in the case of racks or shelves set or drawn from both sides, the total width must not exceed 1.3 m.

Tas H117.9 Washing facilities

Washing facilities served with running hot and cold water for the use of all employees engaged in a lead process must be provided consisting of—

- (a) one washbasin for each 5 employees, or part thereof; and
- (b) one shower bath for each 8 employees, or part thereof.

Tas H117.10 Change rooms

In every work place in which lead is processed there must be provided two suitable furnished change rooms for the use of employees as follows—

- (a) one of the change rooms must be used for taking off, storing, and putting on of the street clothing of employees; and
- (b) the other of the change rooms must be used for the taking off, storing, and putting on of overalls and other clothing worn in any work room; and
- (c) each change room must be so constructed and situated as to prevent the entry into the room of dust or fumes generated in a workroom; and
- (d) each change room must be in close proximity to the washing facilities *required in Tas H117.9*.

After Tas Part H117 insert Tas Part H118 as follows:

TAS PART H118 BOOTHS FOR SPRAY PAINTING OR SPRAY COATING

Tas H118.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building in which spray painting or spray coating is undertaken.

Tas H118.2 Design and construction of booths

A spray painting booth is to be designed and constructed to comply with AS/NZS 4114.1 Spray Painting Booths, designated spray painting areas and paint mixing rooms. Part 1: Design, construction and testing.

After Tas Part H118 insert Tas Part H119 as follows:

TAS PART H119 ELECTRICITY DISTRIBUTION SUBSTATIONS

Tas H119.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every surface building type electricity distribution substation as defined in Aurora Energy's "Distribution Substation Design and Construction Standard".

Tas H119.2 Building-type substations

A building-type electricity distribution substation which complies with the building design and construction requirements of Aurora Energy's "Distribution Substation Design and Construction Standard" satisfies this Part.

After Tas Part H119 insert Tas Part H120 as follows:

TAS PART H120 PREMISES FOR STORAGE OF DANGEROUS GOODS

Tas H120.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to every building used for the storage of dangerous goods covered by the *Dangerous Substances (Safe Handling) Act 2005* except for explosives.

Tas H120.2 Interpretation

The words "dangerous goods", "explosive" and "flammable liquid" have the same meaning as in the *Dangerous Substances (Safe Handling) Act 2005*.

Tas H120.3 Class of dangerous goods

The classification of dangerous goods will be as prescribed in the *Dangerous Substances (Safe Handling) Regulations 2009*.

Tas H120.4 Premises for storage of dangerous goods

- (a) A building must comply with the relevant Australian Standard, applicable to the storage of dangerous goods listed below:
 - (i) Class 3 flammable liquids: AS 1940.
 - (ii) Pesticides: AS 2507.
 - (iii) Liquefied petroleum gas: AS/NZS 1596.
 - (iv) Gas installations: AS 5601.
 - (v) Anhydrous ammonia: AS 2022.
 - (vi) Chlorine: AS/NZS 2927.
 - (vii) Organic peroxides: AS 2714.
 - (viii) Class 8 substances-Corrosives: AS 3780.
- (b) Except as provided in (a) a room, or space, for the storage of dangerous goods must be on the ground floor and may be—
 - (i) attached to an *external wall* of a building; or
 - (ii) located within a building; or
 - (iii) separate from any building.
- (c) A room, or space, attached to or located within a building must be separated from the remainder of the building by one or more walls, each having an FRL not less than 240/240/240.
- (d) Every *external wall* of a room used for the handling or storage of dangerous goods, if not *required* to have an FRL, must be *non-combustible*.
- (e) If a storage area attached to an *external wall* of a building is a space without walls, other than the separating wall, the fire protected separating wall must extend for a distance of 5 m on each side of the common part of the wall or to the end of the wall, whichever is less.
- (f) Unless the wall *required* in (c) extends, over its full length, to the underside of the roof covering, the ceiling of a room, or space, for the storage of dangerous goods must have FRL not less than 180/180/180.
- (g) The floor surface of a room, or space, for the storage of dangerous goods must be—
 - (i) of hardwood or a *non-combustible* material; and
 - (ii) resistant to attack by, and compatible with the dangerous goods stored in the room or space; and
 - (iii) of impervious construction.
- (h) Where a Class 2.1 flammable gas cylinder is to be stored in a recess enclosed by walls and a ceiling, the side opposite the cylinder safety valve must allow for the free unimpeded discharge of gas from the safety valve.
- (i) The requirement of (h) is satisfied if the side is provided with a secure full height open *non-combustible* mesh or similar open material access door or enclosure with openings sufficient to prevent interference to the installation.

- (j) Except as *required* in (h) and (i), the provisions of the Australian Standards shall apply in cases of conflict between these provisions and those in the following section of this Appendix.

Tas H120.5 Workrooms

A workroom for industrial or commercial use of dangerous goods must—

- (a) be located in accordance with AS 2430 Part 1 from any *fire source feature*; and
- (b) have all doors opening outwards; and
- (c) have passages of escape clear of machinery or other plant.

Tas H120.6 Exits

- (a) *Exits* must be provided in accordance with **Part D1**.
- (b) Any door in a wall, separating a room or space for storage and handling of dangerous goods from another room, must have an FRL in accordance with **Specification C1.1** but not less than 120/120/120.

Tas H120.7 Explosion vents

- (a) A room, or space, in which dangerous goods are stored must be provided with natural or mechanical ventilation so that any vapour generated within the storage is diluted with and removed by air passing through the storage area. Air dilution of the vapour should be sufficient to maintain the storage below the lower explosive limits and recommended workplace exposure standards.
- (b) The requirements of (a) are satisfied if ventilation provided to the room or space in which the dangerous goods are stored is in accordance with the ventilation requirements of AS 1940.

Tas H120.8 Spill Collection Bunds

- (a) A spill collection bund must be provided for all liquid dangerous goods stored in a room or space.
- (b) For Class 3 dangerous goods the bund must comply with the requirements of AS 1940.
- (c) For liquid dangerous goods other than Class 3, the spill collection bund—
 - (i) must be capable of containing 100% of the largest package or tank plus 25% of the storage capacity up to 10 000 L together with 10% of the storage capacity greater than 10 000 L; and
 - (ii) may form part of the room or space or may be separate; and
 - (iii) must be constructed of materials that are impervious to the dangerous goods it is to contain.
- (d) Separate bunds must be provided for dangerous goods that are incompatible.

Tas H120.9 Electrical equipment

Any electrical equipment in a room or space used for the storage of dangerous goods is to comply with the provisions outlined in AS 2430 Part 1 and AS 2381 Part 1, 2, 6 and 7.

After Tas Part H120 insert Tas Part H121, as follows:

TAS PART H121 HAIRDRESSERS' PREMISES**Tas H121.1 Application of Part**

This Part applies to any building or part of a building used as a hairdressers' premises.

Tas H121.2 Size of operating section

The operating section of a hairdressers' premises must have—

- (a) any floor plan dimension not less than 2.5 m; and
- (b) a *floor area* sufficient to enable the operations to proceed without inconvenience to the operators or the customers.

Tas H121.3 Premises in a residence

A hairdressers' premises located in a residence must—

- (a) be isolated from the living quarters; and
- (b) have direct access from a public place.

Tas H121.4 Sanitary facilities

Except where sanitary facilities are available for common use, every hairdressers' premises which has more than 5 operating seats must be provided with one water closet and one washbasin for use by customers.

After Tas Part H121 insert Tas Part H122 as follows:

**TAS PART H122 EARLY CHILDHOOD CENTRES
AND SCHOOL AGE CARE FACILITIES**

OBJECTIVE

Tas H122 O1

The *Objective* of this Part is to regulate the physical specification of *early childhood centres* and *school age care facilities* at which education and care is provided.

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT**Tas H122 F1**

An *early childhood centre* and *school age care facility* must be designed and constructed to provide a safe environment and provide for the health, safety and well-being of the children, parents and staff using the centre.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**Tas H122 P1**

The design and construction of an *early childhood centre* and *school age care facility* must to the degree necessary, provide an environment that is spacious enough to prevent overcrowding, and supports a range of daily activities and routines including—

- (a) indoor playing; and
- (b) outdoor playing; and
- (c) sleeping.

Tas H122 P2

An *early childhood centre* and *school age care facility*, must to the degree necessary, have sufficient space and facilities to ensure a healthy, safe and comfortable environment for children, staff and parents including—

- (a) sanitary facilities; and
- (b) nappy changing facilities; and
- (c) laundry facilities; and
- (d) food preparation facilities; and
- (e) reception, administration and staff facilities; and
- (f) storage facilities; and
- (g) suitable—
 - (i) floor surfaces; and
 - (ii) lighting and ventilation; and
 - (iii) fire safety provisions; and
 - (iv) windows and glazing; and
 - (v) heating and cooling.

Tas H122 P3

An *early childhood centre* and *school age care facility* must to the degree necessary, have fencing around the perimeter of any outdoor play space, and any identified hazard isolated by fences, barriers and gates.

Application:

Tas H122 O1, Tas H122 F1 and Tas H122 P1 to Tas H122 P3 apply to *early childhood centres* and *school age care facilities* approved under the *Education and Care Services National Law Act (Tas) 2011* or licenced under the *Child Care Act 2001*.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Tas H122.0 Application of Part

This Part applies to a *Early Childhood Centre* and *School Age Care Facilities Code* and *school age care facilities* approved under the *Education and Care Services National Law Act (Tas) 2011* or licensed under the *Child Care Act 2001*.

Tas H122.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- (a) *Performance Requirement Tas H122 P1* is satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of the *Early Childhood Centre and School Age Care Facilities Code*.
- (b) *Performance Requirement Tas H122 P2* is satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of the *Early Childhood Centre and School Age Care Facilities Code*.
- (c) *Performance Requirement Tas H122 P3* is satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of the *Early Childhood Centre and School Age Care Facilities Code*.

After Tas Part H122 insert Tas Part H123 as follows:

TAS PART H123 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

OBJECTIVE

Tas H123 O1

The objective of this Part is to safeguard the *public* who assemble for public events in *temporary structures* and other persons who use *temporary structures* from illness or injury.

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT**Tas H123 F1**

A temporary structure is to—

- (a) withstand the combination of loads and other actions to which it may reasonably be subjected; and
- (b) be of materials that resists the spread of fire so that occupants have time to evacuate safely without being overcome by the effect of a fire; and
- (c) be provided with—
 - (i) safe, equitable and dignified access for the people using the structure; and
 - (ii) means of evacuation that allow occupants time to evacuate safely without being overcome by the effects of an emergency; and
 - (iii) a safe and hazard free environment for the people using the structure; and
 - (iv) adequate lighting upon failure of normal lighting during an emergency; and
 - (v) adequate means for occupants to identify exits and paths of travel to an exit; and
 - (vi) fire fighting equipment for occupants to undertake fire-fighting operation if a fire occurs; and
 - (vii) sanitary facilities for personal hygiene for the people using the structure; and
 - (viii) natural or artificial lighting to enable the safe use and movement of people using the structure; and
 - (ix) means of ventilation with outdoor air which will maintain adequate air quality; and
- (d) have any—
 - (i) electrical services in or associated with the structure installed in a manner that provides adequate safety for occupants; and
 - (ii) heating appliances located in the structure installed in a way that reduces the likelihood of fire and harmful emissions spreading beyond the appliance; and
 - (iii) temporary seating located in or associated with the structure able to withstand the combination of loads and other actions to which they may reasonably be subjected to and provide a safe means of evacuation in an emergency.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**Tas H123 P1**

A *temporary structure* must, to the degree necessary, be capable of sustaining at an acceptable level of safety and serviceability the most adverse combination of loads and other actions to which it may reasonably be expected to be subjected.

Tas H123 P2

The material used in a *temporary structure* must, to the degree necessary, be capable of resisting the spread of fire to limit the generation of smoke and heat, and any toxic gases likely to be produced.

Tas H123 P3

- (a) Access must be provided to the degree necessary, to enable safe, equitable and dignified movement of people to and within a *temporary structure*.
- (b) So that people can move safely to and within a *temporary structure*, it must have—
 - (i) walking surfaces with safe gradients; and
 - (ii) stairways and ramps with slip-resistant walking surfaces; and
 - (iii) suitable handrails where necessary to assist and provide stability to people using a stairway or ramp.

Tas H123 P4

- (a) *Exits* must be provided to the degree necessary, from a *temporary structure* to enable the safe evacuation of occupants, with their number, location and dimensions being appropriate to the—
 - (i) travel distances to *exits*; and
 - (ii) number, mobility and other characteristics of the occupants, and
 - (iii) function or use of the structure.
- (b) So that occupants can safely evacuate a *temporary structure*, paths of travel to *exits* must have dimensions appropriate to the—
 - (i) number, mobility and other characteristics of the occupants; and
 - (ii) function or use of the structure.

Tas H123 P5

Where a person could fall 1 m or more, due to a sudden change of level within or associated with a *temporary structure*, a barrier must to the degree necessary, be provided which must be—

- (a) continuous and extend for the full extent of the hazard; and
- (b) of a height to protect the people from accidentally falling from the level; and

- (c) constructed to prevent the people from falling through the barrier; and
- (d) capable of restricting the passage of children; and
- (e) of strength and rigidity to withstand the foreseeable impact of the people and where appropriate, the static pressure of the people pressing against it.

Tas H123 P6

A level of illumination for safe evacuation from a *temporary structure* in an emergency must be provided, to the degree necessary, appropriate to the—

- (a) function or use of the structure; and
- (b) size of the structure; and
- (c) distance of travel to an *exit*.

Tas H123 P7

To facilitate evacuation from a *temporary structure* suitable signs or other means of identification must, to the degree necessary—

- (a) be provided to identify the location of *exits*; and
- (b) guide the occupants to *exits*; and
- (c) be clearly visible to the occupants; and
- (d) operate in the event of power failure for sufficient time for the occupants to safely evacuate.

Tas H123 P8

Fire equipment must be installed in a *temporary structure* to the degree necessary, to allow the occupants to undertake initial attack on a fire appropriate to the—

- (a) function or use of the structure; and
- (b) fire hazard.

Tas H123 P9

Sanitary facilities for personal hygiene must be provided in a convenient location associated with a *temporary structure*, to the degree necessary, appropriate to the—

- (a) function or use of the structure; and
- (b) number and gender of the occupants; and
- (c) disability or other particular needs of the occupants.

Tas H123 P10

Lighting must be installed to the degree necessary, to provide a level of illumination appropriate to the function or use of a *temporary structure* to enable safe use and movement by the occupants.

Tas H123 P11

Ventilation must be provided to the degree necessary, to a level appropriate to the function or use of a *temporary structure*.

Tas H123 P12

Electrical services must be installed to the degree necessary, to provide a level of safety appropriate to the environment and function or use of a *temporary structure* by the occupants.

Tas H123 P13

Where provided in a *temporary structure*, a heating appliance and its associated components must be installed to the degree necessary—

- (a) to withstand the temperatures likely to be generated by the appliance; and
- (b) so that it does not raise the temperature of any structural element to a level that would adversely affect the element's physical or mechanical properties or function; and
- (c) so that hot products of combustion will not—
 - (i) escape through the walls of the associated components; and
 - (ii) discharge to a position that will cause fire to spread to nearby combustible materials or allow smoke to penetrate the *temporary structure*; and
 - (iii) in the case of solid-fuel burning appliances, be discharged above appropriate emission limits.

Tas H123 P14

A *temporary structure* of tiered seating must be designed and constructed to the degree necessary, to provide for the safety of the occupants and orderly means of evacuation in an emergency.

Application:

Tas H123 O1, Tas H123 F1 and Tas H123 P1 to P14 only applies to a *temporary structure* that—

- (a) is used by the *public* as a place of assembly as described in the *Public Health Act 1997*; and
- (b) is a *temporary structure* as described in the *Building Act 2000*.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Tas H123.0 Application of Part

This Part only applies to a *temporary structure* that—

- (a) is used by the *public* as a place of assembly as described in the *Public Health Act 1997*; and
- (b) is a *temporary structure* as described in the *Building Act 2000*.

Tas H123.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements Tas H123 P1 to Tas H123 P14 are satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of **Tas H123.0** to **Tas H123.15**.

Tas H123.2 Structure

- (a) A *temporary structure* must be capable of resisting loads and actions determined in accordance with the following:
 - (i) Dead and live loads and load combinations: AS 1170.1 or AS/NZS 1170.1
 - (ii) Wind loads: AS 1170.2 or AS/NZS 1170.2.
- (b) Materials and forms of construction used in a *temporary structure* must as far as practicable comply with the relevant Australian Standard.

Tas H123.3 Fire resisting material

Roof and wall coverings to a *temporary structure* (including any lining or internal materials) must not be more than the *spread-of-flame index* and the *smoke-developed index* values in **Table Tas H123.3**:

TABLE Tas H123.3

Component	Spread of Flame Index	Smoke Developed Index
Roof covering (ceiling); or	6	3
Roof covering (ceiling); & walls; and	0	7
Walls (including lining material); or	6	5
Walls (including lining material)	0	7
Note: The <i>spread-of-flame index</i> and <i>smoke-developed index</i> are interrelated. When reading the table, the <i>spread-of-flame index</i> for a component determines the <i>smoke-developed index</i> for the component. If the <i>spread-of-flame index</i> for components is zero, then a higher <i>smoke-developed index</i> is permitted.		

Tas H123.4 Access

- (a) Access for people with disabilities must be provided to and within a *temporary structure* by means of a continuous path of travel.
- (b) Access for people with disabilities must be provided to—
 - (i) any public sanitary facilities; and
 - (ii) all areas normally used by the *public* but excluding those areas only used by persons working in the *temporary structure*.
- (c) If fixed seating is provided, in a *temporary structure*, wheelchair spaces must be provided not less than—
 - (i) 1 wheelchair space for up to 100 seats; and
 - (ii) 2 wheelchair spaces for 100 - 200 seats; and
 - (iii) an additional wheelchair space for each additional 200 seats or part thereof.
- (d) Parts of the *temporary structure* required to be accessible must comply with AS 1428.1.

Tas H123.5 Exits and entrances

- (a) *Exits* to be provided to a *temporary structure* must be not less than the number of *exits* and aggregate width specified in **Table Tas H123.5** for the number of persons accommodated.
- (b) *Exits* are to be distributed as evenly as practicable around a *temporary structure*.
- (c) The maximum travel distance to an *exit* must as far as practicable, not be more than 20 m where only one *exit* is provided and 40 m where more than one *exit* is provided.
- (d) Every part of an entrance or *exit* must provide a minimum unobstructed height of 2000 mm and, where the entrance or *exit* is beneath a stepped seating platform, infilled riser or other projections, and overhead protection must be provided above the entrance or path of travel to the *exit*.
- (e) A flap or curtain used to cover an exit must be so designed that, when it is secured, it will not obstruct or impede egress.

Tas TABLE H123.5

Number of exits and width		
Accommodation Provided (persons)	Number of Exits Required	Aggregate Width of Exits (mm)
1-25	1	1000
26-50	1	1500
51-75	2	2000
76-100	2	2500
101-200	3	3000
201-400	3	4000

Tas TABLE H123.5 (Continued)

Number of exits and width		
Accommodation Provided (persons)	Number of Exits Required	Aggregate Width of Exits (mm)
401-600	4	6000
601-800	5	8000
801-1000	5	9000
over 1000	5 plus one additional <i>exit</i> for each additional 450 persons or part thereof.	9000 plus 500 mm for each additional 50 persons or part thereof.
Note: (a) Where only one <i>exit</i> is provided that <i>exit</i> must be at least 1000 mm wide. (b) Where 2 <i>exits</i> are provided each must be at least 1000 mm wide. (c) Width may be reduced by 250 mm at doorways.		

Tas H123.6 Barriers

A rigid barrier with no openings more than 125 mm wide must—

- (a) be provided at least 1000 mm high above the floor of a platform used as a *temporary structure*, and extend in the case of—
 - (i) a stepped platform, from the front of the first riser to the back of the platform and along the rear of that platform for its full width; and
 - (ii) an inclined platform, from the front of the first row of seating to the back of the highest platform and along the rear of that platform for its full width; and
 - (iii) any other platform which is more than 1 m above the surrounding surface, other than a performance stage, to each side of the platform; and
- (b) not obstruct any aisle, cross-over or *exit*.

Tas H123.7 Emergency lighting

An emergency lighting system must as far as practicable—

- (a) be installed in any enclosed area of a *temporary structure* more than 300 m² in area; and
- (b) comply with AS 2293.1.

Tas H123.8 Exit signs

Exit signs must as far as practicable be provided above all *exits* and comply with AS 2293.1.

Tas H123.9 Fire fighting equipment

Portable fire extinguishers must as far as practicable be—

- (a) provided in a *temporary structure* as listed in **Table Tas H123.9**; and
- (b) be selected, located and distributed in accordance with Section 1, 2, 3, and 4 of AS 2444.

TABLE Tas H123.9

Requirements for extinguishers	Risk class (as defined in AS 2444)
All <i>temporary structure</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) To cover Class A fire risks: (b) To cover Class B fire risks in locations where flammable liquids in excess of 20 litres are stored or used (not including liquid held in fuel tanks or vehicles); (c) To cover fire risks involving live electrical equipment (E). (d) To cover Class F fire risks involving cooking oils and fats in cooking areas:

Tas H123.10 Sanitary facilities

Sanitary facilities must as far as practicable be provided, within a 50 m distance from a *temporary structure* according to the numbers set out in **Table Tas H123.10**.

TABLE Tas H123.10

Sanitary Facilities									
	Closet Fixtures			Urinals			Washbasins		
Sanitary facilities to be provided	1	2	Each extra	1	2	Each extra	1	2	Each extra
Number of males	100	300	200	50	100	50*	50	200	200
Number of females	25	50	50**	-	-	-	50	150	200
<p>*Where the number of male patrons exceeds 250, not less than 5 urinals must be provided plus one additional urinal for every additional 100 males in excess of 250.</p> <p>**Where the number of female patrons exceeds 250, not less than 6 closet fixtures must be provided plus one additional closet fixture for every 100 females in excess of 250.</p> <p>A unisex facility must be provided for people with disabilities and this facility must comply with AS 1428.1.</p>									

Tas H123.11 Lighting

- (a) Natural or artificial lighting must be provided to all enclosed areas in a *temporary structure*.

- (b) Natural lighting must as far as practicable be not less than 10% of the floor area of the enclosed area.
- (c) The artificial lighting system must as far as practicable comply with the relevant provisions of AS 1680 Parts 1, 2.0, 2.1, 2.2 and 2.3.

Tas H123.12 Ventilation

- (a) Natural ventilation or mechanical ventilation must be provided to all enclosed areas in a *temporary structure*.
- (b) Natural ventilation must as far as is practicable consist of openings or devices which can be opened with an aggregate opening of not less than 5% of the floor area of the enclosed area.
- (c) Mechanical ventilation must as far as practicable comply with the relevant provisions of AS 1668.2.

Tas H123.13 Electrical

- (a) All electrical installations in a *temporary structure* must be installed in accordance with AS/NZS 3002.
- (b) All electrical equipment in a *temporary structure* must be tested in accordance with AS 3760.

Tas H123.14 Heating appliances

The installation of a stove, heater or similar appliance in a *temporary structure* must as far as practicable comply with the following standards:

- (a) Domestic oil-fired appliances – Installation: AS 1691
- (b) Domestic solid-fuel burning appliances – Emissions: AS/NZS 4013
Installation: AS/NZS 2918.
- (c) Pressure equipment: AS/NZS 1200.
- (d) L P gas portable mobile appliances: AS 2658.

Tas H123.15 Seating

A seating area in a *temporary structure* must as far as practicable comply with H1.4.

After Tas Part H123 insert Tas Part H124 as follows:

TAS PART H124 PREMISES WHERE WORK IS UNDERTAKEN ON GAS-FUELLED VEHICLES

Tas H124.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building where work is undertaken on gas-fuelled vehicles.

Tas H124.2 Working areas

The working area of a building where work is undertaken on a gas-fuelled vehicle is to be designed and constructed to comply with the requirement for premises in AS 2746 Working areas for gas-fuelled vehicles.

Delete Part I2 and replace with Tas Part I2 as follows:

Tas Part I2 ENERGY EFFICIENCY INSTALLATIONS

Delete Part I2 and replace with BCA 2009 Part I2.

Delete Section J and replace with Tas Section J as follows:

Tas Section J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Delete Section J and replace with BCA 2009 Section J.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

All legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction or performance of plumbing installations are consolidated into the *Building Act 2000* and other legislative instruments under that Act, such as regulations, codes (including the Tasmanian Plumbing Code (TPC) and the Tasmanian Appendix, Volume One - Appendices of the NCC) and standards.

APPENDIX

VICTORIA

INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia (BCA) provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in Victoria and shall be treated as amendments to the Code.

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX VICTORIA

Victoria

A GENERAL PROVISIONS

- Vic A1.1 Definitions
- Vic Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

D ACCESS AND EGRESS

- Vic D1.4 Exit travel distances
- Vic D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits
- Vic D2.21 Operation of latch

E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

- Vic Table E1.5 Requirements for Sprinklers
- Vic Specification E1.5 Fire Sprinkler Systems
- Vic Specification E2.2a Smoke Detection and Alarm Systems

F HEALTH AND AMENITY

- Vic FF2.2 Functional Statements
- Vic FP2.2 Performance Requirement
- Vic F2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Vic F2.3 Facilities in Class 3 to 9 buildings
- Vic Table F2.3 Sanitary Facilities in Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 Buildings
- Vic F2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments
- Vic F2.101 First aid rooms
- Vic FO3 Objective
- Vic FF3.1 Functional Statement
- Vic FP3.1 Performance Requirement
- Vic F3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Vic F3.101 Childrens services - size of rooms
- Vic F3.102 Class 3 buildings - size of rooms
- Vic F3.103 Class 3, 9a and 9c residential aged care buildings - size of rooms
- Vic F4.1 Provision of natural light
- Vic F4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting

G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

- Vic G1.1 Swimming pools

H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS**Vic Part H101 CLASS 3, CLASS 9a and CLASS 9c RESIDENTIAL AGED CARE BUILDINGS**

- Vic HP101.1 - HP101.3 Performance Requirements
- Vic H101.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Vic H101.1 Application of Part
- Vic H101.2 Doorway width
- Vic H101.3 Windows
- Vic H101.4 Grab rails and handrails
- Vic H101.5 Water temperature
- Vic H101.6 Electronic communications system
- Vic H101.7 Electrical power outlets

Vic Part H102 PLACES OF PUBLIC ENTERTAINMENT

- Vic HP102.1 - HP102.3 Performance Requirements
- Vic H102.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Vic H102.1 Application of Part
- Vic H102.2 Temporary tiered seating, concourses and embankments
- Vic H102.3 Motor vehicle racing
- Vic H102.4 Sanitary and amenity facilities

Vic Part H103 FIRE SAFETY IN CLASS 2 AND CLASS 3 BUILDINGS

- Vic H103.1 Fire safety in Class 2 and Class 3 buildings

Vic Part H104 CLASS 9b CHILDREN'S SERVICES

- Vic HP104.1 Performance Requirement
- Vic H104.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Vic H104.1 Application of Part
- Vic H104.2 Doorways to a children's room

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY**VIC Part J7 HOT WATER SUPPLY AND SWIMMING POOL AND SPA POOL PLANT**

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1 INTERPRETATION

Vary A1.1 as follows:

Vic A1.1 Definitions

Add the definition of "*children's service*" as follows:

Children's service has the same meaning as it has under the Children's Services Act 1996, but excludes a service where education and care is primarily provided to school aged children.

Substitute the definition of "*early childhood centre*" as follows:

Early childhood centre means—

- (a) any premises, or part thereof, providing or intending to provide a centre-based education and care service within the meaning of the Education and Care Services National Law Act 2010, and the Education and Care Services National Regulations 2011, excluding a service where education and care is primarily provided to school aged children; and
- (b) a *children's service*.

Add the definition of "*hotel offering shared accommodation*" as follows:

Hotel offering shared accommodation means a hotel which has any *sole-occupancy units* that can be shared by unrelated persons.

Add the definition of "*residential care building*" as follows:

Residential care building means a building which is a place of residence where 10% or more of persons who reside there need physical assistance in conducting their daily activities and to evacuate the building during an emergency (including any residential care service, State funded residential care service or supported residential service as defined in the Health Services Act 1988 and an *aged care building*) but does not include—

- (a) a hospital; or
- (b) a dwelling in which 2 or more members of the same family and not more than 2 other persons would ordinarily be resident; or
- (c) a place of residence where only one resident needs physical assistance in conducting their daily activities and to evacuate the building during an emergency.

Add the definition of "*restricted children's service*" as follows:

Restricted children's service means a *children's service* that is—

- (a) a limited hours Type 1 service; or
 - (b) a limited hours Type 2 service; or
 - (c) a short term Type 1 service; or
 - (d) a short term Type 2 service,
- as defined in the Children's Services Regulations 2009; or
- (e) an associated children's service within the meaning of the Children's Services Act 1996 approved to be operated by an approved provider at the same place as an approved education and care service that is required to meet the conditions of a limited hours Type 1 service, a limited hours Type 2 service, a short term Type 1 service, or a short term Type 2 service.

Add the definition of "*shared accommodation building*" as follows:

Shared accommodation building means a Class 3 building having—

- (a) more than one *sole-occupancy unit* of which any *sole-occupancy unit* has sleeping facilities capable of accommodating 3 or more unrelated persons; or
- (b) sleeping facilities capable of accommodating 13 or more unrelated persons,

that is a boarding-house, chalet, guest house, lodging-house, backpacker accommodation or the like, or a residential part of a *hotel offering shared accommodation* but does not include a *residential care building*, a motel or a residential part of a *school*, *health-care building* or detention centre.

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 the following additional and revised clause references and additional documents:

VIC Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Vic Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
AS 1926		Swimming pool safety	
Part 1	1993	Fencing for swimming pools	Vic G1.1(ba)
		Amdt 1, June 2000	
Part 2	1995	Location of fencing for private swimming pools	Vic G1.1(ba)
AS 2118		Automatic fire sprinkler systems	
Part 4	1995	Residential	Vic Spec E1.5, Vic H103.1

Vic Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS (Continued)

No.	Date	Title	BCA Clause(s)
CAMS—Track operator's safety guide			
Edition 2	June 1993	Confederation of Australian Motor Sport	Vic H102.3
Supported residential services design guidelines			
Second edition	July 2006	Department of Human Services	Vic H101.4, Vic H101.5
Residential fire safety systems			
Practice Note 2008–07	May 2008	Building Commission	Vic Spec E2.2a, Vic H103.1
Emergency communication systems			
Practice Note 2008–08	May 2008	Building Commission	Vic H103.1

SECTION D ACCESS AND EGRESS

PART D1 PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

Substitute the lead-in to D1.4(d) as follows:

Vic D1.4 Exit travel distances

- (d) **Class 9 buildings** — in a *patient care area* in a Class 9a building and in a *children's service*—

Delete D1.6(f)(iv) as follows:

Vic D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits

(f)

(iv) (Deleted)

PART D2 CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

Add Vic D2.21 (a)(vi) as follows:

Vic D2.21 Operation of latch

- (a)(vi) is an exit door from a *children's service* which does not open to an outdoor space enclosed in accordance with **Vic H104.4**, in which case the device must be located between 1.5 m and 1.65 m above the floor and the door must be *self-closing*.

SECTION E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

PART E1 FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

Delete reference to Class 9c *aged care building* and add references to *shared accommodation buildings* and *residential care buildings* in **Table E1.5** and substitute Note (3) of **Table E1.5** as follows:

VIC Table E1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRINKLERS

Occupancy	When sprinklers are required
<i>Residential care buildings</i>	In all buildings.
<i>Shared accommodation buildings</i>	In all buildings.
<p>(3) For the purposes of this Table, occupancies of excessive <i>fire hazard</i> comprise buildings which contain—</p> <p>(a) hazardous process risks including the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Aircraft hangars. (ii) Electrical/electronic manufacturing and assembly (predominantly plastic components). (iii) Fire-lighter manufacturing. (iv) Fireworks manufacturing. (v) Flammable liquid spraying. (vi) Foam plastic goods manufacturing and/or processing. (vii) Foam rubber goods manufacturing and/or processing. (viii) Hydrocarbon based sheet product manufacturing and/or processing. (ix) Nitrocellulose and nitrocellulose goods manufacturing. (x) Paint and varnish works, solvent based. (xi) Plastic goods manufacturing and/or processing works. (xii) Resin and turpentine manufacturing. (xiii) Vehicle repair shops. <p>(b) <i>combustible</i> goods with an aggregate volume exceeding 2000 m³ and stored to a height greater than 4 m such as the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Aerosol packs with flammable contents. (ii) Cartons and associated packing material excluding cartons with densely packed non-combustible content. (iii) Electrical appliances where the components are predominantly plastic. (iv) Foamed rubber or plastics including wrappings or preformed containers. (v) Paper products. 	

VIC Table E1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRINKLERS (Continued)

Occupancy	When sprinklers are required
(vi) Plastic, rubber, vinyl and other sheets in the form of offcuts, random pieces or rolls.	
(vii) Textiles raw and finished.	
(viii) Timber products.	

Substitute Clause 2(b) of Specification E1.5 as follows:

Vic Specification E1.5 FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

2. Adoption of AS 2118

- (b) for a Class 2 or 3 building or a *residential care building* other than a Class 9c *aged care building*: AS 2118.4 as applicable; or

Substitute Clause 4(e) of Specification E2.2a as follows:

Vic Specification E2.2a SMOKE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEMS

4. Smoke detection system

- (e) In a Class 9c *aged care building*—
 - (i) if the building accommodates more than 20 residents, manual call points must be installed in paths of travel so that no point on a floor is more than 30 m from a manual call point; and
 - (ii) indication of the zone where the smoke detection system has actuated must be achieved by one of the following:
 - (A)
 - (aa) remote automatic indication of each zone must be given in each smoke compartment; and
 - (bb) indication of (aa) must be indicated on remote annunciator panels with alpha-numeric displays with a minimum of 20 characters of 9 mm minimum height; or
 - (B)
 - (aa) indication of the zone where the smoke detection system has actuated must be communicated via a suitable interface with the fire indicator panel to a portable remote communication device; and
 - (bb) at least one such portable remote communication device per smoke compartment must be provided to staff nominated by the owner or operator and properly instructed as to the duties and responsibilities involved; and
 - (cc) the portable remote communication device may be a pager with alpha-numeric display or portable telephone handset with capability of receiving alpha-numeric display.

Substitute Clause 7(b) and (c) of Specification E2.2a as follows:

7. System monitoring

- (b) A smoke detection system in a Class 9a *health-care building*, if the building accommodates more than 20 patients, unless the building is sprinklered and the sprinkler system is permanently connected to a fire station, or other approved monitoring service with a direct data link to a fire station, in accordance with Practice Note 2008-07.
- (c) (deleted).

SECTION F HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F2 SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

Substitute application of *Functional Statement* FF2.2 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS

Application:

FF2.2 only applies to—

- (a) a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building; and
- (b) a Class 9a *health-care building*; and
- (c) a Class 9c *aged care building*; and
- (d) an *early childhood centre* other than a *restricted children's service*.

Substitute application of *Performance Requirement* FP2.2 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Application:

FP2.2 only applies to—

- (a) a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building; and
- (b) a Class 9a *health-care building*; and
- (c) a Class 9c *aged care building*; and
- (d) an *early childhood centre* other than a *restricted children's service*.

Substitute Vic F2.0 as follows:

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Vic F2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements FP2.1 to FP2.6 are satisfied by complying with F2.1 to F2.8 and Vic F2.101.

Substitute F2.3(g) as follows:

Vic F2.3 Facilities in Class 3 to 9 buildings

- (g) A Class 9b *early childhood centre*, other than a *children's service*, must be provided with—
 - (i) a kitchen or food preparation area with a kitchen sink, separate hand washing facilities, space for a refrigerator and space for cooking facilities, with—
 - (A) the facilities protected by a door or gate with child proof latches to prevent unsupervised access to the facilities by children younger than 5 years old; and
 - (B) the ability to facilitate supervision of children from the facilities if the *early childhood centre* accommodates children younger than 2 years old; and
 - (ii) one bath, shower or shower-bath; and
 - (iii) if the centre accommodates children younger than 3 years old—
 - (A) a laundry facility comprising a washtub and space in the same room for a washing machine; and
 - (B) a bench type baby bath, which is within 1 m of the nappy change bench; and
 - (C) a nappy changing bench which—
 - (aa) is within 1 m of separate adult hand washing facilities and bench type baby bath; and
 - (bb) must be not less than 900 mm² in area and at a height of not less than 850 mm, but not more than 900 mm above the finished floor level; and
 - (cc) must have a space not less than 800 mm high, 500 mm wide and 800 mm deep for the storage of steps; and
 - (dd) is positioned to permit a staff member changing a nappy to have visibility of the play area at all times.
- (ga) A *children's service* must be provided with—

- (i) a kitchen or facilities for the preparation and cooking of food for children including washing up facilities and a space for refrigerated food storage facilities; and
- (ii) except in a *restricted children's service*, if the service accommodates children younger than 3 years of age—
 - (A) a laundry facility comprising a washtub and space in the same room for a washing machine; and
 - (B) a bench-type baby bath, with hot and cold water connected, and a nappy change bench in close proximity; and
- (iii) except in a *restricted children's service*, one bath or shower-bath.

Vary Table F2.3 as follows:

Vic Table F2.3 Sanitary Facilities in Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 Buildings

User Group	Closet Pans		Urinals		Washbasins	
	Design Occupancy	Number	Design Occupancy	Number	Design Occupancy	Number
Class 9b — <i>early childhood centre</i>						
Children	1 — 30	2			1 — 30	2
	> 30	Add 1 per 15			>30	Add 1 per 15

Note:

Facilities for use by children must be—

- (a) junior closet pans, except that those in a *restricted children's service* may be adult height toilets if they are fitted with a removable seat suitable for children and a wide and stable step in front; and
- (b) washbasins with a rim height not exceeding 600 mm, except that those in a *restricted children's service* may be adult height washbasins if they are provided with a wide and stable step in front; and
- (c) except in a *children's service*, accessible from both indoor and outdoor play areas; and
- (d) in a *children's service*, other than a *restricted children's service*, the closet pans must be located in relation to children's rooms and outdoor play spaces so that children using toilets can be observed by staff from children's rooms and outdoor play space.

Substitute Vic F2.5(c) as follows:

Vic F2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments

- (c) In an *early childhood centre*, other than a *restricted children's service*, closet pans situated in a group for use by children must be separated from one another by means of a partition, which, except for the doorway, is opaque for a height of not less than 900 mm but not more than 1200 mm above the floor.

Add Vic F2.101 as follows:

Vic F2.101 First aid rooms

- (a) If an *assembly building*, place of public entertainment (as defined in the Building Act 1993) or an *open spectator stand* accommodates more than 5000 spectators at an arena, sportsground, showground, racecourse, cricket ground, football ground, coursing ground, motor racing arena, or the like, a suitable room or rooms must be provided in accordance with **Table F2.101** for use by para-medical attendants for first aid purposes.

Table F2.101 FIRST AID ROOMS

Spectator Capacity	Number of Rooms
5 001–10 000	1
10 001–15 000	2
15 001–30 000	3
each extra 15 000 or part thereof	1

- (b) **Conditions:** First aid rooms *required* by (a) must—
- (i) be distributed as uniformly as possible throughout the *assembly building* or *open spectator stand*; and
 - (ii) be convenient to a public road; and
 - (iii) be readily accessible from within and outside the arena or ground; and
 - (iv) have a *floor area* of not less than 24 m²; and
 - (v) be provided with a suitable wash basin or sink.

PART F3 ROOM SIZES

Substitute FO3 as follows:

OBJECTIVE

Vic FO3

The *Objective* of this Part is to safeguard occupants from injury or loss of amenity caused by inadequate size of a room or space.

Substitute FF3.1 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENT

Vic FF3.1

A building is to be constructed with sufficient size in a room or space suitable for the intended use.

Substitute FP3.1 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT

Vic FP3.1

A *habitable room* or space must have sufficient size to enable the room or space to fulfil its intended use.

Substitute Vic F3.0 as follows:

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Vic F3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirement Vic FP3.1 is satisfied by complying with F3.1 and Vic F3.101 to Vic F3.103.

Add Vic F3.101 as follows:

Vic F3.101 Children's services — size of rooms

- (a) A children's room in a *children's service* must have a *floor area* allowing a clear space of at least 3.25 m² for each child using that room.
- (b) When calculating the clear space *required* by (a) any passageway or thoroughfare less than 3 metres wide, kitchen, toilet or shower area, storage area (including cupboards), areas through which doors may swing, cot rooms (including areas where fixed cots will be used or stored) or any other ancillary area must not be included.

Add Vic F3.102 as follows:

Vic F3.102 Class 3 buildings — size of rooms

A *habitable room* in a Class 3 building (other than a *residential aged care building*)—

- (a) must have a *floor area* of at least 7.5 m²; or
- (b) may have a *floor area* less than 7.5 m² provided the room has light and ventilation not less than that *required* for a room having a *floor area* of 7.5 m².

Add Vic F3.103 as follows:

Vic F3.103 Class 3, 9a and 9c residential aged care buildings — size of rooms

In a *residential aged care building*—

- (a) each bedroom must have a *floor area* of not less than 12 m² per occupant; and
- (b) all other common *habitable rooms* (other than kitchens) must have a *floor area* of not less than 7.5 m² with—
 - (i) in a Class 3 hostel or supported residential services building or Class 9c *aged care building* an aggregate *floor area* of not less than 3.5 m² per occupant; or
 - (ii) in a Class 9a nursing home an aggregate *floor area* of not less than 2.5 m² per occupant.

PART F4 LIGHT AND VENTILATION

Delete F4.1(d) and insert Vic F4.1(d) as follows:

Vic F4.1 Provision of natural light

- (d) **Class 9b buildings** — to all general purpose classrooms in primary or secondary *schools* and all playrooms or the like for the use of children in an *early childhood centre* other than a *restricted children's service*.

Substitute F4.2(b) and F4.2(d) and delete F4.2(c) as follows:

Vic F4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting

- (b) In a Class 2, 3 or 9 building or Class 4 part of a building a *required window* that faces a boundary of an adjoining allotment or a wall of the same building or another building on the allotment must not be less than a horizontal distance from that boundary or wall that is the greater of—
 - (i) generally — 1 m; and
 - (ii) in a *patient care area* or other room used for sleeping purposes in a Class 9a or Class 9c building — 3 m; and
 - (iii) 50% of the square root of the exterior height of the wall in which the *window* is located, measured in metres from its sill.
- (c) (deleted).
- (d) In a Class 9b *early childhood centre*, other than a *restricted children's service*, the sills of 50% of *windows* in children's rooms must be located not more than 500 mm above the floor level.

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

Add Vic G1.1(ba) as follows:

Vic G1.1 Swimming pools

- (ba) **Safety barriers:** A *swimming pool* associated with a *children's service*, with a depth of water more than 300 mm, must have fencing or other barriers in accordance with AS 1926 Parts 1 and 2.

SECTION H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

Add Vic Part H101 as follows:

Vic Part H101 CLASS 3, CLASS 9a AND CLASS 9c RESIDENTIAL AGED CARE BUILDINGS

Application:

This Part only applies to Class 3, Class 9a and Class 9c *residential aged care buildings*.

Note.

Vic Part H101 — Class 3, Class 9a and Class 9c Residential Aged Care Buildings contains additional *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* for Sections D and F for Class 3, Class 9a and Class 9c *residential aged care buildings* as well as additional *Performance Requirements* and associated *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Vic HP101.1

The temperature of water supplied to baths and showers for use by residents must be controlled to avoid the risk of scalding whilst ensuring the stored water temperature does not encourage the growth of *Legionella Bacteria*.

Vic HP101.2

An electronic communication system must be provided to enable residents and staff to summon assistance in *habitable rooms* (other than kitchens), water closets, shower rooms and bathrooms.

Vic HP101.3

Sufficient general purpose outlets must be provided for electrical appliances in bedrooms in locations that obviate the need for extension leads.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**Vic H101.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

Performance Requirements **Vic HP101.1** to **HP101.3** and relevant *Performance Requirements* in **Sections D** and **F** are satisfied by complying with **Vic H101.1** to **Vic H101.7**.

Vic H101.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to Class 3, Class 9a and Class 9c residential aged care buildings.

Vic H101.2 Doorway width

- (a) The clear width of all bedroom entrance doorways must be not less than 900 mm.
- (b) The clear width of all other doorways must be not less than 800 mm.

Vic H101.3 Windows

- (a) The sill height of *windows* in *habitable rooms* (except kitchens) must be not more than 900 mm above the floor.
- (b) Openable *windows* must be provided with flyscreens.

Vic H101.4 Grab rails and handrails

- (a) Grab rails must be provided in association with every closet fixture, shower or bath in accordance with the Supported Residential Services Design Guidelines.
- (b) Handrails must be provided along both sides of every common passageway or common corridor used by residents and they must be—
 - (i) fixed not less than 50 mm clear of the wall; and
 - (ii) where practicable, continuous for their full length.

Vic H101.5 Water temperature

The hot water temperature must comply with the minimum design parameters of the Supported Residential Services Design Guidelines.

Vic H101.6 Electronic communications system

A communication system must—

- (a) contain a back-up power supply; and
- (b) have a control that enables the call to be cancelled manually at the point of origin only; and
- (c) incorporate a device at the point of origin that indicates the system has operated; and
- (d) incorporate an indication panel in the manager's office or staff area that clearly identifies the point of origin of a call; and
- (e) have an audible tone that has a continuous signal until deactivated at the point of origin; and
- (f) be operational at all times; and
- (g) have two call points in each en-suite or combined shower/water closet with one call point located in the shower recess and the other on the wall beside the closet pan ahead of the bowl rim; and
- (h) have call points (other than those mentioned in (g)) which are located—
 - (i) within the reach of a resident whilst in bed; and
 - (ii) in all common *habitable rooms*; and
 - (iii) in all bathrooms, *sanitary compartments* and shower rooms where the call point must be of waterproof construction and within reach of any fallen resident.

Vic H101.7 Electrical power outlets

General purpose outlets must be provided as follows.

- (a) In bedrooms with one occupant—two general purpose outlets provided on a minimum of two walls.
- (b) For each additional occupant—two general purpose outlets provided at the head of each additional bed.

Add Vic Part H102 as follows:

Vic Part H102 PLACES OF PUBLIC ENTERTAINMENT

Application:

This Part applies to all places of public entertainment as defined in the Building Act 1993 and prescribed in regulation 1102 of the Building Regulations 2006.

Note.

Vic Part H102 — Places of Public Entertainment contains additional deemed-to-satisfy and *Performance Requirements* for Sections B, D and F for places of public entertainment.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Vic HP102.1

Temporary tiered seating stands and embankments must be designed using engineering principles and constructed to provide for the safety of the patrons and orderly means of evacuation in an emergency.

Vic HP102.2

Every place of public entertainment where motor vehicle racing takes place must be provided with suitable barriers and guard rails to protect the public from injury.

Vic HP102.3

Sufficient sanitary and amenity facilities must be provided at places of public entertainment for use by patrons.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Vic H102.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements Vic HP102.1 to HP102.3 are satisfied by complying with Vic H102.1 to Vic H102.4.

Vic H102.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to all places of public entertainment.

Vic H102.2 Temporary tiered seating, concourses and embankments

Temporary tiered seating stands and embankments must be designed and constructed as follows:

- (a) Temporary tiered seating, concourses and embankments must comply with the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of **Section B**, **Section D** and **Clause H1.4(a)(ii)**, (iii) and (b).
- (b) The maximum slope of tiered seating must not exceed 34 degrees when measured from the horizontal plane.
- (c) Aisles must be evenly spaced throughout the structure and have—
 - (i) a minimum width of 1 m; and
 - (ii) the aggregate of aisle widths leading to an *exit* must be not less than the *required* width of that *exit*; and
 - (iii) no one aisle may serve more than—
 - (A) 120 patrons where individual seating with backs is provided; or

- (B) 200 patrons in any other case.
- (d) When applying the balustrading requirements of the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of **Section D**, the height of plat balustrading that directly abuts seating (i.e. with no aisle between the seat and the balustrading) must be measured from the plat or seat base whichever is the higher.
- (e) Transverse aisles must be provided at a horizontal distance of not more than 10 m between any row of seats.
- (f) All individual moveable seats must be—
 - (i) fixed in groups of not less than four; and
 - (ii) not used in stepped or ramped seating areas.
- (g) For any spectators' embankment—
 - (i) where the rear slope exceeds 1 in 5, a guard rail must be installed with no openings except at the heads of steps or ramps; and
 - (ii) where the forward or front slope exceeds 1 in 8, the embankment must be stepped with plats not less than 500 mm wide and risers not greater than 230 mm high.
- (h) Guard rails must be installed to protect any fence, balustrade or railing associated with stepped or ramped standing spaces where excess pressure is expected from spectators.

Vic H102.3 Motor vehicle racing

Motor vehicle racing barriers and guard rails must be provided so as to comply with the following:

- (a) CAMS "Track Operators Safety Guide".
- (b) For stock car racing, barriers installed—
 - (i) on the outer amend of the track: a continuous concrete, close boarding or long guard barrier having a height of not less than 900 mm; and
 - (ii) on all curved sections of the track within 3 m of the barrier described in (i): a stout welded or woven wire mesh fence adequately supported having a height of not less than 1.8 m above the adjacent spectators viewing areas; and
 - (iii) between the public viewing area and the fence described in (ii): a suitable crowd barrier that will prevent spectators entering within 1.2 m of that fence.

Vic H102.4 Sanitary and amenity facilities

Sanitary and amenity facilities in places of public entertainment must be provided as follows:

- (a) In places other than buildings:
 - (i) One closet fixture for every 200 female patrons or part thereof.
 - (ii) One closet fixture or urinal for every 200 male patrons or part thereof, at least 30% of which must be in the form of closet fixtures.

- (iii) One washbasin for every 200 patrons or part thereof.
 - (iv) For use by disabled persons, one unisex facility within the meaning of **Part F2** of the BCA for every 100 closet fixtures or part thereof *required* under (i) and (ii).
 - (v) One drinking fountain or drinking tap for every washbasin *required* under (iii).
 - (vi) First aid facilities in accordance with **Vic F2.101**.
- (b) In buildings, as *required* to comply with **Part F2**.

Add Vic Part H103 as follows:

Vic Part H103 FIRE SAFETY IN CLASS 2 AND CLASS 3 BUILDINGS

Note:

There are no *Performance Requirements* for Vic Part H103 — Fire Safety in Class 2 and Class 3 Buildings as the Part contains only additional *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* for **Sections C, D and E** for Class 2 and Class 3 buildings.

Vic H103.1 Fire safety in Class 2 and Class 3 buildings

- (a) A Class 2 or Class 3 building not more than 25 m in *effective height* that has a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5** installed throughout the building may be constructed in accordance with (b) provided that—
 - (i) where a sprinkler system complying with AS 2118.4, as applicable, is installed in the building, the system must be permanently connected with a direct data link or other approved monitoring system to a fire station or fire station dispatch centre in accordance with Practice Note 2008-07 if—
 - (A) it has more than 100 sprinkler heads; or
 - (B) in the case of a *residential care building*, the building will accommodate more than 32 residents; and
 - (ii) the sprinkler system is fitted with sprinklers complying with Clause 2.6 of AS 2118.4 in bedrooms; and
 - (iii) an *automatic* smoke detection and alarm system is installed in accordance with **Specification E2.2a**, except that it need not be connected to a fire station and in the case of a *residential care building* must be installed in accordance with—
 - (A) **Specification E2.2a Clause 4**; or
 - (B)
 - (aa) **Specification E2.2a Clause 3** provided **Clause 3 (c)(ii)** is applied as if the building was not protected with a sprinkler system; and
 - (bb) Practice Note 2008-07; and
 - (iv) in a *residential care building*, the *automatic* smoke detection and alarm system and the sprinkler system are connected to an alarm panel constructed in accordance with Practice Note 2008-07; and

- (v) fire orders are provided in a Class 3 building in accordance with **G4.9**.
- (b) Subject to compliance with (a), the following concessions are permissible:
 - (i) **C3.11** — deletion of the requirement for *self-closing* fire doors or solid-core doors (except those opening to fire-isolated exits).
 - (ii) **Specification C1.1** — deletion of the requirement for *internal walls* to have an FRL subject to compliance with **Clause 2.2 of Specification C1.1**, except that walls bounding *public corridors* must be—
 - (A) clad in *non-combustible* material; and
 - (B) extend to the underside of a *non-combustible* roof covering or to the underside of the ceiling and be designed to minimise smoke spread to the corridor; and
 - (C) not incorporate any penetrations above door head height unless the penetrations are adequately stopped to prevent the free passage of smoke.
 - (iii) **D1.3** — deletion of the requirement for stairways that serve not more than 5 storeys to be *fire-isolated stairways* provided—
 - (A) the stairway is smoke enclosed with construction that complies with **D2.6** (except **D2.6(a)** and **(b)(i)**); and
 - (B) in a Class 3 building, storeys 4 and 5 are served by a minimum of 2 smoke enclosed stairways.
 - (iv) **D1.4(a)(i)(A)** — except in a *residential care building*, the maximum distance of travel may be increased from 6 m to 12 m.
 - (v) **D1.5(c)(i)** — except in a *residential care building*, the maximum distance between alternative exits may be increased from 45 m to 60 m.
 - (vi) **E1.3** — deletion of the requirement for internal fire hydrants in buildings that have a *rise in storeys* of not more than 5 provided—
 - (A) an external fire hydrant is installed in accordance with **E1.3** except that in a *residential care building*, the nozzle at the end of the length of hose need only reach the entry door of any *sole-occupancy unit* to be considered as covering the floor area within the *sole-occupancy unit*; or
 - (B) a dry fire main fitted with standard fire hydrant heads is installed in the building provided that-
 - (aa) each fire hydrant head is located in accordance with **E1.3** and fitted with a blank cap or plug; and
 - (bb) the pipework is installed in accordance with **E1.3** (as if it were a fire main suitable for that building) except that it does not need to be connected to a water supply; and
 - (cc) a booster inlet connection is provided in accordance with **E1.3**; and
 - (dd) an external fire hydrant is located within 60 m of the booster connection.

- (vii) **E1.4** — deletion of the requirement for fire hose reels in buildings that have a *rise in storeys* of not more than 5 provided the building is protected by—
 - (A) fire hydrants that comply with **E1.3**; or
 - (B) dry fire mains in accordance with **(vi)(B)**.
- (viii) **E4.9** — deletion of the requirement for a sound system and intercom system for emergency purposes in a *residential care building* provided an intercom system with override public address facility is installed in accordance with Practice Note 2008-08.

Add Vic Part H104 as follows:

Vic Part H104 CLASS 9b CHILDREN'S SERVICES

Application:

This Part only applies to Class 9b *children's services*.

Note:

Vic Part H104 — Class 9b Children's Services contains an additional *Performance Requirement* and *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* for **Section D** for Class 9b *children's services*.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENT

Vic HP104.1

The number and location of doorways to a children's room must take into account the mobility of children in the event that emergency egress or entry is required.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Vic H104.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirement **Vic HP104.1** and relevant *Performance Requirements* in **Section D** are satisfied by complying with **Vic H104.1** and **Vic H104.2**.

Vic H104.1 Application of Part

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to Class 9b *children's services*.

Vic H104.2 Doorways to a children's room

A children's room must have a doorway, or in the case of every such room accommodating more than 21 children at least two doorways as widely separated as possible, providing direct access to or from—

- (a) an outdoor play area; or
- (b) a passage leading to the outside; or
- (c) a fire-isolated *exit*.

Insert SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

PART J7 HOT WATER SUPPLY AND SWIMMING POOL AND SPA POOL PLANT

Delete J7.2 and insert Vic J7.2 as follows:

Vic J7.2 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Building Act 1993, Building Regulations 2006 and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Abattoirs and Knackeries

1.1 Administering Agency

Department of Primary Industries

Relevant Legislation

Meat Industry Act 1993

2. Accommodation – Residential (Boarding Houses, Guest Houses, Hostels, Motels)

2.1 Administering Agency

Department of Human Services

Municipal council

Relevant Legislation

Public Health and Wellbeing Act 2008

Public Health and Wellbeing Regulations 2009

3. Accommodation - Supported Residential Services**3.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Health Services Act 1988

Health Services (Supported Residential Services) Regulations 2001

Supported Residential Services Design Guidelines

4. Alpine Resorts**4.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Planning and Community Development

Alpine Resorts Management Boards

Relevant Legislation

Alpine Resorts (Management) Act 1997

5. Asbestos Removal**5.1 Administering Agency**

Victorian WorkCover Authority

Environment Protection Authority

Relevant Legislation

Occupational Health and Safety Act 2004

Environment Protection Act 1970

6. Children's Services**6.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Education and Early Childhood Development

Relevant Legislation

Children's Services Act 1996

Children's Services Regulations 2009

Education and Care Services National Law Act 2010

7. Crematoria, Mausolea, Vaults, etc.**7.1 Administering Agency**

Department of Human Services, Cemeteries and Crematoria Program, Public Health Branch (crematoria, mausolea)
Cemetery Trusts (vaults)

Relevant Legislation

Cemeteries and Crematoria Act 2003
Cemeteries and Crematoria Regulations 2005

8. Crown Land

8.1 Administering Agency

Department of Planning and Community Development
Crown Land committees of management

Relevant Legislation

Crown Land (Reserves) Act 1978

9. Dairies

9.1 Administering Agency

Dairy Food Safety Victoria

Relevant Legislation

Dairy Act 2000

10. Dangerous Goods

10.1 Administering Agency

Victorian WorkCover Authority

Relevant Legislation

Dangerous Goods Act 1985

Dangerous Goods (Explosives) Regulations 2011

Dangerous Goods (HCDG) Regulations 2005

Dangerous Goods (Storage and Handling) Regulations 2000

Codes of practice published by the WorkCover Authority

11. Electrical Installations

11.1 Administering Agency

Energy Safe Victoria

Electrical transmission and distribution companies

Relevant Legislation

Electricity Industry Act 2000

Electricity Industry (Residual Provisions) Act 1993
 Electricity Safety Act 1998
 State Electricity Commission Act 1958
 Electricity Safety (Installations) Regulations 2009
 Standards Australia Wiring Rules, AS/NZS 3000/3013

12. Fences - dividing

12.1 Administering Agency

Department of Justice

Relevant Legislation

Fences Act 1968

13. Fire Prevention in Existing Buildings

13.1 Administering Agency

Municipal council

Relevant Legislation

Building Act 1993

Building Regulations 2006

14. Food Premises

14.1 Administering Agency

Department of Human Services

Municipal council

Relevant Legislation

Food Act 1984

15. Gas Installations

15.1 Administering Agency

Energy Safe Victoria

Relevant Legislation

Gas Industry Act 2001

Gas Safety Act 1997

Gas Safety (Gas Installation) Regulations 2008

AS5601 – 2004 Gas Installations

16. Historic Buildings

16.1 Administering Agency

Department of Planning and Community Development
Executive Director under the Heritage Act 1995

Relevant Legislation

Heritage Act 1995

17. Hospitals, Nursing Homes and Health Care Buildings

17.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Public Health and Wellbeing Act 2008

Mental Health Act 1986

18. Lift Installations

18.1 Administering Agency

Victorian WorkCover Authority

Relevant Legislation

Occupational Health and Safety Act 2004

Occupational Health and Safety Regulations 2007

AS1735 Lifts, escalators and moving walks

19. Moveable Dwellings (in Caravan Parks)

19.1 Administering Agency

Department of Justice

Municipal council

Relevant Legislation

Residential Tenancies Act 1997

Residential Tenancies (Caravan Parks and Moveable Dwellings

Registration and Standards) Regulations 2010

20. Occupational Health and Safety

20.1 Administering Agency

Victorian WorkCover Authority

Relevant Legislation

Occupational Health and Safety Act 2004

Occupational Health and Safety Regulations 2007

Codes of practice published by the WorkCover Authority

21. Pharmacies

21.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Victorian Pharmacy Authority

Relevant Legislation

Pharmacy Regulation Act 2010

Guidelines for Good Pharmaceutical Practice 2010

22. Planning Controls

22.1 Administering Agency

Department of Planning and Community Development

Municipal council

Relevant Legislation

Planning and Environment Act 1987

Planning schemes

23. Prisons and Jails

23.1 Administering Agency

Department of Justice

Corrections Victoria

Relevant Legislation

Corrections Act 1986

24. Radiation Safety

24.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Radiation Act 2005

Radiation Regulations 2007

25. Schools (Non-Government)

25.1 Administering Agency

Department of Education and Early Childhood Development

Registered Schools Board

Relevant Legislation

Education and Training Reform Act 2006

26. Sanitary Plumbing, Water Supply and Sewerage

26.1 Administering Agency

Plumbing Industry Commission

Relevant Legislation

Building Act 1993

Plumbing Regulations 2008

National Construction Code Volume Three Plumbing Code of Australia

AS/NZS3500 National Plumbing and Drainage Code

27 Septic Tank Installations

27.1 Administering Agency

Environment Protection Authority

Municipal council

Relevant Legislation

Environment Protection Act 1970

Guidelines For Environmental Management: Code of Practice-Onsite wastewater management

28. Smoking Restrictions

28.1 Administering Agency

Department of Human Services

Municipal council

Relevant Legislation

Tobacco Act 1987

29. Subdivision of Buildings

29.1 Administering Agency

Department of Planning and Community Development

Municipal council

Relevant Legislation

Subdivision Act 1988

APPENDIX

WESTERN AUSTRALIA

INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia (BCA) provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in Western Australia.

APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Western Australia

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1960, Building Regulations 1989 and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Building

1.1 Administering Agency

Builders Registration Board

Relevant Legislation

Builders Registration Act 1939

2. Caravan Parks and Camping Grounds

2.1 Administering Agency

Department of Local Government

Relevant Legislation

Caravan Park and Camping Grounds Act 1995

Caravan Park and Camping Grounds Regulations 1997

3. Child Care

3.1 Administering Agency

Department for Communities

Relevant Legislation

Child Care Services Act 2007

Child Care Services Regulations 2007

Child Care Services (Child Care) Regulations 2006

Child Care Services (Family Day Care) Regulations 2006

Child Care Services (Outside School Hours Care) Regulations 2006

Child Care Services (Outside School Hours Family Day Care) Regulations 2006

4. Fences

4.1 Administering Agency

Building Commission, Department of Commerce

Relevant Legislation

Dividing Fences Act 1961

5. Health

5.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Health Act 1911

Health Act (Laundries & Bathrooms) Regulations

Health Act (Swimming Pools) Regulations 1964

Health (Air Handling and Water Systems) Regulations 1994

Health (Asbestos) Regulations 1992

Health (Construction Work) Regulations 1973

Construction Camp Regulations

Health (Public Buildings) Regulations 1992

Health (Treatment of Sewage and Disposal of Effluent and Liquid Waste) Regulations 1974

Health (Rottnest Island) By-laws 1989

Health (Food Hygiene) Regulations 1993

Sewerage (Lighting, Ventilation and Construction) Regulations 1971

Model By-Laws Series 'A' and earlier versions where adopted by Local Government

Health Local Laws where adopted by Local Government

6. Heritage

6.1 Administering Agency

Heritage Council of Western Australia

Relevant Legislation

Heritage of Western Australia Act 1990

7. Hospitals and Health Services

7.1 Administering Agency

Department of Health

Relevant Legislation

Hospitals and Health Services Act 1927

8. Housing

8.1 Administering Agency

Department of Housing

Relevant Legislation

Housing Act 1980

9. Land**9.1 Administering Agency**

Western Australian Land Information Authority

Relevant Legislation

Strata Titles Act 1985

10. Occupational Health and Safety**10.1 Administering Agency**

Worksafe, Department of Commerce

Relevant Legislation

Occupational Safety and Health Act 1984

11. Planning Controls**11.1 Administering Agency**

Department for Planning

Relevant Legislation

Planning and Development Act 2005

Planning and Development (Consequential and Transitional Provisions) Act 2005

12. Public Works**12.1 Administering Agency**

Building Management and Works, Department of Treasury and Finance

Relevant Legislation

Public Works Act 1902



Australian Building Codes Board
Building Australia's Future

Australian Building Codes Board
GPO Box 9839
Canberra ACT 2601
www.abcb.gov.au



*The pages of this book are printed on paper derived
from forests promoting sustainable management.*

ISBN: 978-1-921453-79-3



9 781921 453793